

# 粵卷

jyut<sub>-6</sub> gyun<sup>-2</sup>

## *The Cantonese Scrolls*

心理角色扮演學習廣東話嘅遊戲

sam<sup>-1</sup> lei<sub>-5</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> baan<sub>-6</sub> jin<sup>-2</sup> hok<sub>-6</sub> zaap<sub>-6</sub> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> jau<sub>-4</sub> hei<sub>-3</sub>

*A Cantonese Language Learning Mental Role Playing Game*

范俊樂

faan<sub>-6</sub> zeon<sub>-3</sub> lok<sub>-6</sub>

*Jonathan Vasquez*

二零二六年三月十九日朝早八點

ji<sub>-6</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> ziu<sup>-1</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup> baat<sub>-3</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup>

2026-03-19-0800

Copyright © 2023-2026 Jonathan Vasquez <jon@xyinn.org>

*This game is dedicated to my beautiful wife, **Fallon**, and my dear late Chinchilla daughter, **Leslie**, who have both forever changed my life.*

***Juntos para siempre.***



主 選 單  
zyu<sup>-2</sup> syun<sup>-2</sup> daan<sup>-1</sup>

**Main Menu**

## **Main Menu**

Welcome to ***The Cantonese Scrolls***, 粵卷 (jyut<sub>6</sub> gyun<sup>2</sup>), ***A Cantonese Language Learning Mental Role Playing Game.***

This game can be played in two modes:

<b><i>Single Player</i></b>	This mode is for people who prefer studying independently.
<b><i>Multiplayer (Couch Co-Op)</i></b>	This mode is identical to the above, but you'll have someone else with you to go along for the ride.

## **Game Standards**

<b><i>Writing System</i></b>	<a href="#"><u>Written Cantonese</u></a>
<b><i>Character System</i></b>	<a href="#"><u>Traditional Chinese</u></a>
<b><i>Romanization System</i></b>	<a href="#"><u>Jyutping</u></a>
<b><i>Base Style</i></b>	<a href="#"><u>Hong Kong Cantonese</u></a>

## ***A Living Document***

This game is ***a living document***, and will continuously be updated with more content, extensions, and language corrections.

## ***License***

This game can be ***freely downloaded, used, and/or shared*** by anyone for either ***personal*** or ***educational*** purposes. If you are interested in using it ***commercially***, please contact me. Modifications to this document are ***not allowed***.

## ***About***

Since ***Cantonese has no formal standardization for its phonetic and writing systems***, it is extremely difficult for a new learner to find resources for it, and pick up the language. My goal for this game is to document the Cantonese language as I currently understand it, and create a fun and simple large body of work, that can be ***freely*** used by anyone to learn the language.

***This game is available for download, free of charge, with no internet connection required.*** If you found this game useful and would like to support me in its development, please consider donating by ***clicking the donate coin below***. Thank you!



點 玩

dim<sup>-2</sup> waan<sup>-2</sup>

***How To Play***

## ***How To Play***

Greetings, stranger. I'm surprised to see you here.

***The Cantonese Scrolls*** is a game that is exclusively designed to be played ***in your mind***. As you progress through the game, you will encounter fierce monsters that you don't understand. These monsters are called ***Monsters of Understanding***. They are only monsters because you don't understand them yet, however, as you fight each of these monsters, you will eventually defeat them through ***Understanding***. A monster is only defeated once you understand them. It is recommended not to rush through the game, and make sure to clear each zone without leaving any monsters behind. Rushing through the game without properly defeating the monsters is a recipe for disaster.

Each encounter in ***The Cantonese Scrolls*** is designed to be a single logical step from your current position to the next. This means that every step is optimized to minimize distractions, misunderstanding, and reduce the mental load related to processing new information. Carefully allowing you to focus on the present moment, and allow maximum mental clarity through mindfulness and self reflection of the situation at hand.

There is no sound component for ***The Cantonese Scrolls***. However, the game is using the ***Jyutping*** standard for its romanization. There are many existing resources online that can teach you the pronunciation. Please look for ***Jyutping Pronunciation Guides*** online. It's ok if your pronunciation isn't perfect right from the start. Just jump in and start playing. You'll get better over time. Once you finish the game, you can continue to improve your Cantonese skills by playing the game again and attempting to gain deeper understanding of these sacred texts.

Lastly, for faster navigation throughout the game, please use the ***Waypoint*** system, which can be used through your PDF reader's ***outline*** or ***bookmark*** function.

With that said stranger, never forget that the way to learn a language, is to build a world around it.

Welcome to ***The Cantonese Scrolls***. Your adventure awaits ...

第一幕

dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> mok<sub>-6</sub>

**Act 1**

落雨田

lok<sub>-6</sub> jyu<sub>5</sub> tin<sub>-4</sub>

**Raining Field**

第一任務  
dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

**Quest 1**

搵緊身份  
wan<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-2</sup>

**Searching For Identity**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**I am**

我 係 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**I am a person.**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

***I***

我 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

***I am***

我 唔 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

***I am not***

我 唔 係 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***I am not a person.***

我

ngo˥˩

***I***

我 係

ngo˥˩ hai˨˩

***I am***

我 係 人

ngo˥˩ hai˨˩ jan˨˩˥

***I am a person***

我 係 美 國 人 .

ngo˥˩ hai˨˩ mei˥˩ gwok˨˩˥ jan˨˩˥

***I am American.***

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**I am**

我 唔 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**I am not**

我 唔 係 香 港 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**I am not a Hong Konger.**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 哋

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>

**We**

我 哋 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub>

**We are**

我 哋 係 香 港 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**We are Hong Kongers.**

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你 係

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**You are**

你 係 美 國 人 .

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sub>3</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**You are American.**

你 哋 係 美 國 人 .

nei<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sub>3</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**You are all American.**

佢

keoi<sub>5</sub>

**He/She/It/They**

佢 係

keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**She is**

佢 係 台 灣 人 .

keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> toi<sub>4</sub> waan<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**She is Taiwanese.**

佢 哋 係 台 灣 人 .

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> toi<sub>4</sub> waan<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**They are Taiwanese.**

佢哋唔係台灣人。  
keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> toi<sub>4</sub> waan<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***They are not Taiwanese.***

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 哋

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>

**We**

我 哋 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub>

**We are**

我 哋 係 朋 友 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

**We are friends.**

我 哋 都 係 朋 友 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>2</sup> dou<sup>1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***We are all friends.***

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**I am**

我 係 中 國 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> gwok<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**I am Chinese.**

我 都 係 中 國 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> gwok<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**I am also Chinese.**

佢

keoi<sub>5</sub>

**He**

佢 係

keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

**He is**

佢 係 學 生 .

keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

**He is a student.**

佢 哋 都 係 學 生 .

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

**They are all students.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

## Sound Information

Cantonese is among one of the oldest living languages still used today, with earlier versions of the language dating back to at least the Tang Dynasty (618 CE to 907 CE)<sup>1</sup>. This is at least **1400** years! Cantonese has also retained a lot of older linguistic properties that existed during the Middle Chinese<sup>2</sup> era of the language, and that have been either lost or removed from other Chinese branches. The connection between Cantonese and the Tang Era is so strong that Cantonese people would sometimes refer to themselves as: **Tang People**, 唐人 (tong<sub>4</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>), and Chinatowns in Cantonese are called: **Tang People Street**, 唐人街 (tong<sub>4</sub> jan<sub>4</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup>).

During this time, the language has continued to evolve and develop, and that also includes the way that Cantonese speakers pronounce words. Due to this difference, there are differences in pronunciation in a variety of different scenarios, including slight modifications between **casual** and **formal** speech and thus the **standard romanization** and the alternatives may differ slightly. **The Cantonese Scrolls**, 粵卷 (jyut<sub>6</sub> gyun<sup>-2</sup>), uses the **Jyutping** 粵拼 (jyut<sub>6</sub> ping<sub>3</sub>) standard for all romanization in the game. The game also uses Jonathan Chui's **Cantonese Font** for the font and romanization symbols.

Below is a list of examples for some of the sound modifications you may encounter:

- Characters starting with the vowel **i** sound more like an **e**. Therefore, **to invite**, 請 (cing<sup>-2</sup>), sounds more like ceng<sup>-2</sup>, and **to hear**, 聽 (ting<sub>3</sub>), sounds more like teng<sub>3</sub>.
- Characters starting with the letter **n** are switched to an **l**. For example, **you**, 你 (nei<sub>5</sub>), would become lei<sub>5</sub>, and **woman**, 女 (neoi<sub>5</sub>), would become leoi<sub>5</sub>.
- The sound for **ng** (which is different from the **n** mentioned above) is sometimes added or removed from the beginning of some words. For example, **I**, 我 (ngo<sub>5</sub>), and **love**, 愛 (oi<sub>3</sub>), may end up sounding like o<sub>5</sub> and ngoi<sub>3</sub> instead. Some characters do actually start with **ng**, and some other characters do actually just start with an **o**. However, since not every speaker knows the original sound for every character on the fly, they are sometimes mistakenly added or removed to all characters starting with either **o** or **ng**. This is a hyper correction.

<sup>1</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tang\\_dynasty](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tang_dynasty)

<sup>2</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middle\\_Chinese](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middle_Chinese)

Some of these sound modifications are differences between *casual* and *literal* speech, and some are considered **Lazy Pronunciation**, 懶音 (laan<sub>5</sub> jam<sup>-1</sup>), and are pretty common. Putting this all together, if I said to my wife: **You are a beautiful woman. I love you**, the standard pronunciation would be: 你係靚女。我愛你 (nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> leng<sub>3</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> oi<sub>3</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>), but in reality it may sound more like: lei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> leng<sub>3</sub> lei<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> ngoi<sub>3</sub> lei<sub>5</sub>. To make things more interesting, people can decide how much of the lazy pronunciation they want to use, so it is up to the individual on how they want to express themselves, and doesn't need to be perfectly consistent.

To make things easier for yourself, I would recommend just using the standard pronunciations as I've written them, and you can adjust your pronunciation over time based on the Cantonese speakers you are speaking with.

## Yes/No In Cantonese

If you want to make a statement, either affirming something, or negating something, you can either use the verb directly, or add 唔 (m<sub>4</sub>) before the verb to negate the verb. At the same time, Cantonese doesn't have a generic word for Yes and No. So the same exact technique is used for Yes or No responses as well.

你 係 唔 係 龍 貓 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>?

**Are you a Chinchilla?**

係 . 我 係 龍 貓 .

hai<sub>6</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>.

**Yes. I am a Chinchilla.**

唔 係 . 我 唔 係 龍 貓 .

m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>.

**No. I am not a Chinchilla.**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

佢哋係香港人。你哋都  
係香港人。我唔係香港  
人。我係美國人。我哋唔  
係學生。我哋係朋友。佢  
係學生。你都係學生。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

佢哋係香港人。你哋都係香港人。我唔係香港人。我係美國人。我哋唔係學生。我哋係朋友。佢係學生。你都係學生。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub>  
hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.  
ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub>  
saang<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>. keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub>  
saang<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

***They are Hongkongers. You all are also Hongkongers. I am not a Hongkonger. I am American. We are not students. We are friends. He is a student. You are also a student.***



# 第二任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 2**

# 有冇嘢

jau<sub>,5</sub> mou<sub>,5</sub> je<sub>,5</sub>

## ***Having Or Not Having Stuff***

我

ngo,5

**I**

我 有

ngo,5 jau,5

**I have**

我 有 朋 友 .

ngo,5 jau,5 pang,4 jau,5.

**I have friends.**

我 有 一 個 朋 友 .

ngo,5 jau,5 jat<sup>-1</sup> go-3 pang,4 jau,5.

**I have a friend.**

我 有 一 隻 狗 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>.

***I have a dog.***

我 有 一 條 魚 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> jyu<sub>-4</sub>.

***I have a fish.***

我

ngo,5

**I**

我 冇

ngo,5 mou,5

**I don't have**

我 冇 朋 友 .

ngo,5 mou,5 pang,~4 jau,5.

**I don't have friends.**

你

nei,5

**You**

你 有

nei,5 jau,5

**You have**

你 有 朋 友 .

nei,5 jau,5 pang~4 jau,5.

**You have friends.**

你 冇 朋 友 .

nei,5 mou,5 pang~4 jau,5.

**You don't have friends.**

你 有 冇 朋 友 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>?

***Do you have friends?***

有 ． 我 有 朋 友 ．

jau<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***Yes. I have friends.***

冇 ． 我 冇 朋 友 ．

mou<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***No. I don't have friends.***

—  
jat<sup>-1</sup>  
**1**

—, —  
jat<sup>-1</sup>, ji<sub>-6</sub>  
**1, 2**

—, —, —  
jat<sup>-1</sup>, ji<sub>-6</sub>, saam<sup>-1</sup>  
**1, 2, 3**

一隻狗

jat<sup>-1</sup> zek-3 gau<sup>-2</sup>

**1 Dog**

兩隻狗

loeng<sub>,5</sub> zek-3 gau<sup>-2</sup>

**2 Dogs**

三隻狗

saam<sup>-1</sup> zek-3 gau<sup>-2</sup>

**3 Dogs**

你有冇三隻狗？

nei<sub>,5</sub> jau<sub>,5</sub> mou<sub>,5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> zek-3 gau<sup>-2</sup>?

**Do you have 3 dogs?**

有·我有三隻狗·

jau<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>.

**Yes. I have 3 dogs.**

冇·我有三隻狗·我有兩  
隻狗·

mou<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub>  
zek<sub>-3</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>.

**No. I don't have 3 dogs. I have 2 dogs.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Classifiers:** 隻 + 個

In Cantonese, whenever we want to say something that contains a quantity, we need to also provide a classifier. For example, if we wanted to say: **I have 8 chinchillas**, we can use the 隻 (zek-3) character, which is a classifier usually used for animals. Therefore we would say 我有八隻龍貓 (ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 zek-3 lung,4 mau-1), and not 我有八龍貓 (ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 lung,4 mau-1). If you don't know the classifier for something, you usually can use the generic classifier, 個 (go-3), for it, until you learn the correct one. So you could technically also say 我有八個龍貓 (ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 go-3 lung,4 mau-1), but it may sound a little weird.

我有八隻龍貓。

ngo,5 jau,5 baat-3 zek-3 lung,4 mau-1.

**I have 8 chinchillas.**

佢哋有貓。

keoi,5 dei-2 jau,5 mau-1.

**They have (a) cat(s).**

**Asking Questions About Possessions: 有冇**

If you want to ask someone a Yes/No question regarding whether or not they have something, you can put the 有 (jau<sub>5</sub>) and 冇 (mou<sub>5</sub>) characters together to ask the question, turning it into: **do you have or don't have** said thing.

你 有 冇 龍 貓 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>?

**Do you have chinchillas?**

你 有 冇 兄 弟 姊 妹 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> hing<sup>-1</sup> dai<sub>6</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> mui<sub>6</sub>?

**Do you have brothers and sisters?**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

佢哋有三隻狗。我有狗。

你哋有兩隻狗。

三，二，一，二，三。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

佢哋有三隻狗。我有狗。  
你哋有兩隻狗。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>2</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> zek<sup>-3</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub>  
dei<sup>2</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> zek<sup>-3</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>.

***They have three dogs. I have a dog. You all have two dogs.***

三，二，一，二，三。

saam<sup>-1</sup>, ji<sub>-6</sub>, jat<sup>-1</sup>, ji<sub>-6</sub>, saam<sup>-1</sup>.

**3, 2, 1, 2, 3.**



# 第三任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 3**

嗰本書係我嘅

go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>,5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>

***That's My Book***

一

jat<sup>-1</sup>

**1**

一 本 書

jat<sup>-1</sup>

bun<sup>-2</sup>

syu<sup>-1</sup>

**1 book**

我

ngo,5

**I**

我 嘅

ngo,5 ge-3

**My**

我 嘅 書

ngo,5 ge-3 syu<sup>-1</sup>

**My book**

我 本 書

ngo,5 bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

**My book**

呢

ni<sup>-1</sup>

***This***

呢 本 書

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

***This book***

個

go<sup>-2</sup>

***That***

個 本 書

go<sup>-2</sup>

bun<sup>-2</sup>

syu<sup>-1</sup>

***That book***

呢

ni<sup>-1</sup>

**This**

呢 本 書

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

**This book**

呢 本 書 係

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>

**This book is**

呢 本 書 係 我 嘅 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>-5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>.

**This book is mine.**

嘢

je<sub>5</sub>

**Thing**

呢 個 嘢

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> je<sub>5</sub>

**This thing**

呢 個 嘢 係 我 嘅。

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> je<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub>.

**This thing is mine.**

呢

ni<sup>-1</sup>

***This***

呢 度

ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>

***Here***

嗰

go<sup>-2</sup>

***That***

嗰 度

go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>

***There***

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 係

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup>

**I am**

我 係 呢 度 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

**I am here.**

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你 係

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>2</sup>

**You are**

你 係 個 度 .

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>2</sup> go<sup>2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

**You are there.**

呢

ni<sup>-1</sup>

***This***

呢 啲

ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

***These***

個

go<sup>-2</sup>

***That***

個 啲

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

***Those***

呢

ni<sup>-1</sup>

**This**

呢 啲 嘢

ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub>

**These things**

呢 啲 嘢 係

ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub>

**These things are**

呢 啲 嘢 係 佢 哋 嘅。

ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>.

**These things are theirs.**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 本 書

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

**My book**

我 本 書 喺

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup>

**My book is**

我 本 書 喺 呢 度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>

**My book is here.**

佢 哋

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>

**They**

佢 哋 本 書

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

**Their book**

佢 哋 本 書 係

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup>

**Their book is**

佢 哋 本 書 係 個 度。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

**Their book is there.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Plurality:** 啲

If you want to talk about multiple objects of the same type, you can use the 啲 (di<sup>-1</sup>) classifier.

個啲龍貓有我的書。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***Those Chinchillas have my books.***

### Ownership: 嘅

In Cantonese, ownership can be expressed with the 嘅 (ge-3) character. This means that the left side “owns” the right side. For example 我嘅爸爸媽媽 (ngo,5 ge-3 baa~4 baa~1 maa~4 maa~1) means **my parents**. However, when the two objects are closely related (like a family member), the 嘅 (ge-3) can be omitted. Thus this will be more natural: 我爸爸媽媽 (ngo,5 baa~4 baa~1 maa~4 maa~1). You can also replace the 嘅 (ge-3) with an equivalent classifier for that type, which will also act as an ownership character as well. The plural classifier 啲 (di~1) can be used when referencing ownership of multiple things as well.

佢嘅媽媽

keoi,5 ge-3 maa~4 maa~1

**His mom**

佢媽媽

keoi,5 maa~4 maa~1

**His mom**

我嘅龍貓

ngo,5 ge-3 lung~4 maau~1

**My chinchilla**

我 隻 龍 貓

ngo<sub>5</sub> zek<sub>3</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>

***My chinchilla***

我 嘅 朋 友

ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>

***My friend***

我 啲 朋 友

ngo<sub>5</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>

***My friends***

**Location:** 喺

When attempting to speak about a location that you need to get information for, or maybe something came from that location, you will tend to use 喺 (hai<sup>-2</sup>) before the specific location. The verb related to that location will be added after. Sometimes an additional location indicator can be placed at the end of the word to give more information regarding the location of the object. We will dive deeper into locations in a later dungeon. However, you can see a sneak peek below:

我本書喺呢度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***My book is here.***

我本書喺學校度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> hok<sub>6</sub> haau<sub>6</sub> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***My book is at the school.***

我本書喺學校內面。

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> hok<sub>6</sub> haau<sub>6</sub> noi<sub>6</sub> min<sub>6</sub>.

***My book is inside the school.***

我本書喺學校前面。

ngo<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> hok<sub>6</sub> haau<sub>6</sub> cin<sub>4</sub> min<sub>6</sub>.

***My book is in front of the school.***

### **Articles (The)**

In Cantonese, there isn't really a usage of articles such as the word, "the", in English. However, you could start off the sentence with the corresponding classifier, which will essentially act as such.

個人喺呢度。

go<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>-4</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***The person is here.***

啲書喺嗰度。

di<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***The books are over there.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

我朋友有三本書喺呢  
度. 嗰啲書唔係我嘅. 呢  
啲書係我嘅. 佢哋啲嘢  
都喺呢度.

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

我朋友有三本書喺呢  
度。嗰啲書唔係我嘅。呢  
啲書係我嘅。佢哋啲嘢  
都喺呢度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.  
go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>. ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub>  
ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>. keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***My friend has three books over here. Those books are not mine. These books are mine. Their things are also here.***



# 第四任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 4**

嗰個號碼係乜嘢呀

go<sup>-2</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> hou<sub>-6</sub> maa<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>

***What's That Number***

零

ling<sub>4</sub>

0

一

jat<sup>-1</sup>

1

二

ji<sub>6</sub>

2

三

saam<sup>-1</sup>

3

四

sei<sup>-3</sup>

4

五

ng<sup>5</sup>

5

六

luk<sup>-6</sup>

6

七

cat<sup>-1</sup>

7

八

baat-3

**8**

九

gau<sup>-2</sup>

**9**

十

sap<sub>-6</sub>

**10**

十一

sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**11**

十二

sap<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub>

**12**

二十一

ji<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**21**

三十

saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub>

**30**

三十一

saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**31**

九 十 九

gau<sup>-2</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**99**

一 百

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak<sub>-3</sub>

**100**

一 百 零 一

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak<sub>-3</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**101**

一 百 零 九

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak<sub>-3</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**109**

一 百 一 十

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak-3 jat<sup>-1</sup> sap-6

**110**

一 百 一 十 九

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak-3 jat<sup>-1</sup> sap-6 gau<sup>-2</sup>

**119**

一 百 二 十

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak-3 ji-6 sap-6

**120**

一 百 二 十 一

jat<sup>-1</sup> baak-3 ji-6 sap-6 jat<sup>-1</sup>

**121**

二百

ji<sub>-6</sub> baak<sub>-3</sub>

**200**

二百二十二

ji<sub>-6</sub> baak<sub>-3</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub>

**222**

九百九十九

gau<sup>-2</sup> baak<sub>-3</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**999**

一千

jat<sup>-1</sup> cin<sup>-1</sup>

**1,000**

一 千 九 百 九 十 九

jat<sup>-1</sup> cin<sup>-1</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> baak<sup>-3</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> sap<sup>-6</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**1,999**

二 千

ji<sup>-6</sup> cin<sup>-1</sup>

**2,000**

九 千 九 百 九 十 九

gau<sup>-2</sup> cin<sup>-1</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> baak<sup>-3</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> sap<sup>-6</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**9,999**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**The Number Two: 二 + 兩**

When you are counting numbers in Cantonese, you will use the normal number 二 (ji<sub>-6</sub>), however, if you are speaking about quantities, like if you say 2 Bananas or 2 Chinchillas, you use 兩 (loeng<sub>5</sub>) instead.

一, 二, 三

jat<sup>-1</sup>, ji<sub>-6</sub>, saam<sup>-1</sup>

**1, 2, 3**

一隻龍貓, 兩隻龍貓, 三隻龍貓

jat<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> lung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>, loeng<sub>5</sub> zek<sub>-3</sub> lung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>, saam<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> lung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>

**1 Chinchilla, 2 Chinchillas, 3 Chinchillas**

兩條香蕉

loeng<sub>5</sub> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

**2 Bananas**

### **Twenties and Thirties:** 廿 + 卅

In Cantonese, when you hit the twenties and thirties, instead of saying the full number for anything in the twenties or thirties, you can instead use the shorter equivalents. Saying it feels a bit like slurring the words together, creating a nice blend. When saying 20, or 30 specifically, you usually put some sound next to it so it doesn't feel *lonely*. It's fine to use a filler sound for this purpose. When saying the numbers between 1-9, you normally put an ah sound between the 20 and the digit. So twenty three would sound more like jaa<sub>-6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup> saam<sup>-3</sup> rather than jaa<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-3</sup>.

二十  
ji<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub>  
**20**

廿  
jaa<sub>-6</sub>  
**20**

二十一  
ji<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>  
**21**

廿一  
jaa<sub>-6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup>  
**21**

三十

saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub>

**30**

卅

saa<sup>-1</sup>

**30**

三十一

saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**31**

卅一

saa<sup>-1</sup> aa<sup>-1</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**31**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

我啲朋友有一百零八本  
書。你冇三十六隻貓。個  
啲五千五百七十八啲人  
係美國人。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

我 啲 朋 友 有 一 百 零 八 本  
書 . 你 冇 三 十 六 隻 貓 . 個  
啲 五 千 五 百 七 十 八 啲 人  
係 美 國 人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> baak<sub>3</sub> ling<sub>4</sub> baat<sub>3</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup>  
syu<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> zek<sub>3</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>. go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>  
ng<sub>5</sub> cin<sup>-1</sup> ng<sub>5</sub> baak<sub>3</sub> cat<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> baat<sub>3</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>  
mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sub>3</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***My friends have 108 books. You don't have 36 cats. Those  
5,578 people are Americans.***



# 第五任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 5

你鍾唔鍾意呢本書呀

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>

***Do You Like This Book***

你

nei,5

**You**

我

ngo,5

**I**

你 同 埋 我

nei,5 tung~4 maai~4 ngo,5

**You and Me**

你 同 我

nei,5 tung~4 ngo,5

**You and Me**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 鍾 意

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3

**I like**

我 鍾 意 你 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 nei<sub>5</sub>.

**I like you**

我 唔 鍾 意 你 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 nei<sub>5</sub>.

**I don't like you**

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你 鍾 意

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub>

**You like**

你 鍾 意 呢 本 書 .

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**You like this book**

你 鍾 唔 鍾 意 呢 本 書 ?

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

**Do you like this book?**

鍾意。我鍾意呢本書。

zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3. ngo,5 zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**Yes. I like this book.**

唔鍾意。我唔鍾意呢本書。

m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3. ngo,5 m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**No. I don't like this book.**

兩個

loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub>

**Two**

兩個都

loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup>

**Both of them**

我鍾意兩個都。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup>.

**I like both of them.**

我兩個都鍾意。

ngo<sub>5</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub>.

**I like both of them.**

呢 本 書

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

***This book***

嗰 本 書

go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

***That book***

呢 本 書 定 係 嗰 本 書 ？

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

***This book or that book?***

你 鍾 唔 鍾 意 呢 本 書 定 係  
嗰 本 書 ？

nei<sub>-5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub>  
go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

***Do you like this book or that book?***

呢 本 書

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

***This book***

嗰 本 書

go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

***That book***

呢 本 書 或 者 嗰 本 書 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> waak<sub>6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***This book or that book.***

我 鍾 意 呢 本 書 或 者 嗰 本  
書 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> waak<sub>6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like this book or that book.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Some Usages Of: 都**

The character 都 (dou<sup>-1</sup>) can be used to mean **also**, or it can be used to refer to all of the stuff in the list of items we have just mentioned, which can also be considered as a way of emphasize them.

我都鍾意佢哋。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>.

***I also like them.***

我都鍾意佢哋都。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup>.

***I also like them all.***

**The Different Words For: Or: 定係 + 或者**

There are two different **Or** words in Cantonese, each needs to be used in the appropriate situation. The rule of thumb is that if you are asking a question, you use 定係 (ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub>), and if you are using it in a statement, you use 或者 (waak<sub>-6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup>).

你鍾意芒果定係香蕉？

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>?

***Do you like Mangos or Bananas?***

我兩個都鍾意。芒果或者香蕉。

ngo<sub>5</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> go-3 dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3. mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> waak<sub>-6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like both of them. Mangos or Bananas.***

**The Ten Heavenly Stems and Twelve Earthly Branches:** 天干地支

**The Ten Heavenly Stems**<sup>3</sup>, 天干 (tin<sup>-1</sup> gon<sup>-1</sup>), and **The Twelve Earthly Branches**<sup>4</sup>, 地支 (dei<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>), are part of an Ancient Chinese counting system that were originally used for keeping track of time. Throughout your adventure, you will start seeing these symbols in places where we would want to list things in a **A, B, C** type of pattern. For example **Person A** and **Person B**. You don't need to memorize these, but don't be surprised when you start seeing them.

甲 乙 丙 丁 戊 己 庚 辛 壬 癸

gaap<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sup>-3</sup> bing<sup>-2</sup> ding<sup>-1</sup> mou<sub>-6</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> gang<sup>-1</sup> san<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-4</sub> gwai<sup>-3</sup>

**A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J**

子 丑 寅 卯 辰 巳 午 未 申 酉 戌  
亥

zi<sup>-2</sup> cau<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>-4</sub> maau<sub>-5</sub> san<sub>-4</sub> zi<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> mei<sub>-6</sub> san<sup>-1</sup> zau<sub>-5</sub> seot<sup>-1</sup> hoi<sub>-6</sub>

**1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12**

<sup>3</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heavenly\\_Stems](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heavenly_Stems)

<sup>4</sup>[https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earthly\\_Branches](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earthly_Branches)

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

你朋友鍾唔鐘意呢本書？

乙

---

唔鐘意。佢唔鐘意呢本書。  
書。佢鍾意嗰本書。

甲

---

我都鍾意嗰本書。我有  
呢本書或者嗰本書。

乙

---

我有兩個都，鍾意兩個  
都。你鍾意呢本書定係  
嗰本書？

甲

我都鍾意兩個都。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你 朋 友 鍾 唔 鐘 意 呢 本  
書 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

**Does your friend like this book?**

乙

唔 鍾 意 . 佢 唔 鍾 意 呢 本  
書 . 佢 鍾 意 個 本 書 .

m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub>. keoi<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

keoi<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**No. He doesn't like this book. He likes that book.**

甲

我都鍾意嗰本書。我有  
呢本書或者嗰本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup>  
bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> waak<sub>6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I also like that book. I don't have this book or that book.***

乙

我有兩個都，鍾意兩個  
都。你鍾意呢本書定係  
嗰本書？

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup>, zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub>  
dou<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-2</sup>  
bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

***I have both of them, and like both of them. Do you like this  
book or that book?***

甲

我都鍾意兩個都。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 loeng<sub>5</sub> go-3 dou<sup>-1</sup>.

*I also like both of them.*



# 第六任務

dai<sub>6</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> jam<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>6</sub>

## **Quest 6**

# 我有錢啊

ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>4</sub> aa<sub>3</sub>

***I Don't Have Money***

我有

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>

***I have***

我有五本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I have 5 books***

我有五本書但係

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub>

***I have 5 books but***

我有五本書但係我唔鍾  
意佢哋。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup>

ji<sub>-3</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>.

***I have 5 books but I don't like them***

好

hou<sup>2</sup>

**Good**

好 好

hou<sup>2</sup> hou<sup>2</sup>

**Very good**

靚

leng-3

***Beautiful***

好 靚

hou-2 leng-3

***Very beautiful***

你 好 靚 .

nei,5 hou-2 leng-3.

***You are very beautiful***

幾

gei<sup>-2</sup>

**How many**

多

do<sup>-1</sup>

**Many**

幾 多

gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup>

**How many**

錢

cin<sub>-4</sub>

**Money**

幾 多 錢 ?  
gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> cin<sup>-2?</sup>

***How much money? (How much does it cost?)***

一

jat<sup>-1</sup>

1

一 蚊

jat<sup>-1</sup> man<sup>-1</sup>

**1 dollar (your local currency)**

我 有 一 蚊。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> man<sup>-1</sup>.

**I have 1 dollar.**

我 有 十 五 蚊。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> man<sup>-1</sup>.

**I have 15 dollars.**

你有

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>

***You have***

你有幾多錢？

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> cin<sup>-2</sup>?

***How much money do you have?***

我有十蚊。你呢？

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> man<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***I have 10 dollars. What about you?***

我有錢。

ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>-4</sub>.

***I don't have money.***

呢 啲 錢 呢？

ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>~4</sub> ne<sup>-1?</sup>

***What about this money?***

個 啲 錢 唔 係 我 嘅。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>~4</sub> m<sub>~4</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>~5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>.

***That money isn't mine.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Different Pronunciations Of: 呢**

In Cantonese, there can be identical characters that have different pronunciations depending on the situation, as we experienced with 呢 (ne<sup>-1</sup>).

呢 個 人 好 靚 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jan<sup>-4</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sup>-3</sup>.

***This person is beautiful.***

你 呢 ?

nei<sup>-5</sup> ne<sup>-1?</sup>

***What about you?***

呢 個 呢 ?

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> ne<sup>-1?</sup>

***What about this?***

**Tonal Changes:** 錢

In Cantonese, there are some situations where a character's tone will change. In the encounter we saw previously, the money character normally has the fourth tone: 錢 (cin<sub>4</sub>), but when we use it to ask how much, it changes to the second tone: 錢 (cin<sup>2</sup>).

錢  
cin<sub>4</sub>  
**Money**

幾 多 錢?  
gei<sup>2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> cin<sup>2</sup>?  
**How much does it cost?**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你係唔係學生？

乙

我唔係學生。你呢？

甲

我都唔係學生但係我朋友係學生。

乙

我有好多學生啲朋友。

佢哋都係好人。

甲

好。你有幾多個朋友？

乙

我有一百個朋友。

甲

---

你有好多朋友。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你 係 唔 係 學 生 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>?

***Are you a student?***

乙

我 唔 係 學 生 . 你 呢 ？

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup>?

***I'm not a student. What about you?***

甲

我都唔係學生但係我朋友係學生。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub>  
jau<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm also not a student, but my friend is a student.***

乙

我有好多學生啲朋友。  
佢哋都係好人。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub>  
dei<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***I have a lot of friends that are students. They are all good people.***

甲

好。你有幾多個朋友？

hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> pang<sub>~4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>?

***Good. How many friends do you have?***

乙

我有一百個朋友。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> baak<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> pang<sub>~4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***I have 100 friends.***

甲

你 有 好 多 朋 友 。

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***You have a lot of friends.***



# 第二幕

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> mok<sub>-6</sub>

## **Act 2**

# 毒沙漠

duk<sub>-6</sub> saa<sup>-1</sup> mok<sub>-6</sub>

## **Poisonous Desert**

# 第一任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 1**

你係唔係食緊芒果

nei<sub>-5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

***Are You Eating A Mango***

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你 食

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>

**You eat**

你 食 緊

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup>

**You are eating**

你 食 緊 芒 果 .

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

**You are eating a mango.**

你 係 唔 係 食 緊 芒 果 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>?

***Are you eating a mango?***

我 食 緊 芒 果 。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***I'm eating a mango.***

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 食

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>

**I eat**

我 食 咗

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup>

**I ate**

我 食 咗 芒 果 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

**I ate a mango.**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 會

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub>

**I will**

我 會 食

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>

**I will eat**

我 會 食 芒 果 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

**I will eat (a) mango(s).**

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你 食

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>

**You eat**

你 食 到

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>

**You were able to**

你 食 到 芒 果 .

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

**You were able to eat (a) mango(s).**

你食唔到芒果。

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***You weren't able to eat (a) mango(s).***

你 食 唔 食 到 芒 果 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>?

***Were you able to eat the mango(s)?***

食 到 ． 我 食 到 芒 果 ．

sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***Yes. I was able to eat the mango(s).***

食 唔 到 ． 我 食 唔 到 芒 果 ．

sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***No. I wasn't able to eat the mango(s)***

如 果

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

*If*

如 果 我 食 到 我 嘅 芒 果

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

*If I'm able to eat my mango*

如 果 我 食 到 我 嘅 芒 果 ，  
我 會 食 你 嘅 芒 果 。

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>, ngo<sub>5</sub>  
wui<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

*If I'm able to eat my mango, I will eat your mango.*

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 而 家

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup>

**I now**

我 而 家 會

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub>

**I now will**

我 而 家 會 去

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub>

**I now will go**

我 而 家 會 去 個 度 .  
ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***I now will go there.***

我

ngo,5

**I**

我 睇

ngo,5 tai<sup>-2</sup>

**I read**

我 睇 咗

ngo,5 tai<sup>-2</sup> zo<sup>-2</sup>

**I read (past)**

我 睇 咗 我 本 書 .

ngo,5 tai<sup>-2</sup> zo<sup>-2</sup> ngo,5 bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**I read my book.**

我睇咗我紐約本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> zo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> nau<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-3</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I read my New York book.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Past, Present, And Future Tense:** 咗 + 緊 + 會

One of the nice benefits of Cantonese is that it has no conjugations. This means that representing the past, present, and future can be easily done by simply adding a character before or after the verb, thus the verb character itself stays exactly the same everywhere, forever. As in any natural language, there are some verbs that cannot use these tense characters directly, but we will learn more about this in the future.

我睇咗佢本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> zo<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I finished reading her book.***

我睇緊佢本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I am reading her book.***

我會睇佢本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I will read her book.***

**Inquiring About What Someone Is Currently Doing: 係**

In order to ask someone about something they are currently doing, you can use the verb 係 (hai<sub>-6</sub>). Essentially asking them if they are or are not currently doing said action.

你係唔係去緊個度？

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

**Are you currently going over there?**

係。我去緊個度。

hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

**Yes. I'm going over there.**

唔係。我睇緊書。

m<sub>-4</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**No. I'm reading a book.**

**Successfully Completing Or Failing An Action: 到**

If you want to express that an action that was taken was successful, you place the 到 (dou<sup>-2</sup>) character after the verb, if the action failed, you place 唔 到 (m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>) after the verb.

你 睇 唔 睇 到 佢 本 書 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

**Were you able to read his book?**

睇 到 . 我 睇 到 佢 本 書 .

tai<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**Yes. I was able to read his book.**

睇 唔 到 . 我 睇 唔 到 佢 本 書 .

tai<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**No. I wasn't able to read his book.**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

你而家係唔係睇緊呢本  
書？

乙

---

唔係。我而家食緊香蕉。  
你呢？

甲

---

我而家會去嗰度但係我  
冇錢。如果我有錢我會  
去紐約。

乙

---

我鍾意紐約。我啲朋友  
都係紐約人。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你而家係唔係睇緊呢本書？

nei<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

***Are you reading this book at the moment?***

乙

唔係。我而家食緊香蕉。  
你呢？

m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup>?

***No. I'm currently eating a banana. What about you?***

甲

我而家會去嗰度但係我  
冇錢。如果我有錢我會  
去紐約。

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub>  
mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>-4</sub> jyu<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>-4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub>  
nau<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-3</sub>.

***I'm going over there now but I don't have money. If I had  
money I would go to New York.***

乙

我鍾意紐約。我啲朋友  
都係紐約人。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> nau<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-3</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup>  
hai<sub>-6</sub> nau<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-3</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub>.

***I like New York. My friends are all New Yorkers.***



# 第二任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 2**

你 喺 邊 度 呀

nei<sub>,5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>

**Where Are You**

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你 係

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup>

**You are (located)**

你 係 邊 度？

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

**Where are you?**

我 係 屋 企。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>.

**I am home.**

一 樽

jat<sup>-1</sup> zeon<sup>-1</sup>

**One bottle**

一 樽 水

jat<sup>-1</sup> zeon<sup>-1</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup>

**One bottle of water**

我 樽 水

ngo<sub>5</sub> zeon<sup>-1</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup>

**My bottle of water**

我 樽 水 喺 邊 度 ？

ngo<sub>5</sub> zeon<sup>-1</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

**Where is my bottle of water?**

我 嘅 樽 喺 邊 度？

ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> zeon<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

***Where is my bottle?***

我

ngo<sup>5</sup>

**I**

我 想

ngo<sup>5</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup>

**I want to**

我 想 睇

ngo<sup>5</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup>

**I want to read**

我 想 睇 一 本 書 .

ngo<sup>5</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**I want to read a book.**



我 飲 緊 茶 .

ngo˥ jam˨˩ gan˨˩ caa˨˩.

*I'm drinking tea.*

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 鍾 意

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub>

**I like**

我 鍾 意 飲 茶 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>-4</sub>.

**I like to drink tea.**

我 鍾 意

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub>

***I like***

我 鍾 意 啲 啲

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

***I like those***

我 鍾 意 啲 啲 兩 杯 茶。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> loeng<sub>5</sub> bui<sup>-1</sup> caa<sub>-4</sub>.

***I like those two cups.***

我 好 鍾 意 飲 茶。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>-4</sub>.

***I really like drinking tea.***

我好鍾意飲好多茶。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> caa<sub>-4</sub>.

*I really like drinking a lot of tea.*

我 鍾 意 飲 果 汁 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like to drink juice.***

我 鍾 意 飲 橙 汁 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> caang<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like to drink orange juice.***

我 鍾 意 飲 蘋 果 汁 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like to drink apple juice.***

邊 個

bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

**Who / Which**

你 鍾 意 飲 邊 個

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

**You like to drink which**

你 鍾 意 飲 邊 個 果 汁？ 蘋

果 汁 定 係 橙 汁？

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>? ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

zap<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> caang<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>?

**You like to drink which juice?**

我 鍾 意 飲 蘋 果 汁。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>.

**I like to drink apple juice.**

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 同 意 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> tung<sub>4</sub> ji<sub>3</sub>.

**I agree.**

我 唔 同 意 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> tung<sub>4</sub> ji<sub>3</sub>.

**I don't agree.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

### ***Using Multiple Verbs Together***

If you want to use multiple verbs together, you simply need to put the verbs next to each other.

我 鍾 意 飲 水 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup>.

***I like to drink water.***

我 想 去 嗰 度 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***I want to go there.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你朋友喺邊度？

乙

我朋友喺佢屋企。你呢？

甲

我都喺屋企。而家飲緊  
一杯茶。你呢？

乙

---

我睇緊書。我都想飲嘢  
但係唔鍾意飲茶。我會  
飲果汁。

甲

---

好

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你朋友喺邊度？

nei<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

**Where is your friend?**

乙

我朋友喺佢屋企。你呢？

ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

**My friend is at his house. What about you?**

甲

我 都 喺 屋 企 . 而 家 飲 緊  
一 杯 茶 . 你 呢 ?

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> . ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup>  
bui<sup>-1</sup> caa<sub>4</sub> . nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***I'm also at home. Drinking a cup of tea. What about you?***

乙

我睇緊書。我都想飲嘢  
但係唔鍾意飲茶。我會  
飲果汁。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> je<sub>5</sub>  
daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>-4</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup>  
gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm reading a book. I also want to drink something, but I don't  
like to drink tea. I will drink juice.***

甲

---

好

hou<sup>2</sup>

**Good**



# 第三任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 3

呢個係我爸爸媽媽

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> baa<sub>-4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sub>-4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>

***These Are My Parents***

屋 企

uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>

**Home**

屋 企 人

uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>~4</sub>

**Family / Family Member**

爸爸

baa<sub>~4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup>

**Father**

媽媽

maa<sub>~4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>

**Mother**

爸爸媽媽

baa<sub>~4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sub>~4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>

**Parents**

哥哥

go<sub>4</sub> go<sup>-1</sup>

**Older Brother**

姐姐

ze<sub>4</sub> ze<sup>-1</sup>

**Older Sister**

細佬

sai<sub>3</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Younger Brother**

細妹

sai<sub>3</sub> mui<sup>-2</sup>

**Younger Sister**

兄弟

hing<sup>-1</sup> dai<sub>-6</sub>

**Brothers**

姊妹

zi<sup>-2</sup> mui<sub>-6</sub>

**Sisters**

兄弟姊妹

hing<sup>-1</sup> dai<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> mui<sub>-6</sub>

**Siblings**

呢個人係邊個？

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>~4</sub> hai<sub>~6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3?</sup>

**Who is this person?**

呢個係我爸爸。

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hai<sub>~6</sub> ngo<sub>~5</sub> baa<sub>~4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup>.

**This is my Father.**

嗰啲人係邊個？

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>~4</sub> hai<sub>~6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3?</sup>

**Who are those people?**

嗰啲係我爸爸媽媽。佢  
哋係我屋企人。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>~6</sub> ngo<sub>~5</sub> baa<sub>~4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sub>~4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>. keoi<sub>~5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>  
hai<sub>~6</sub> ngo<sub>~5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>~4</sub>.

**Those are my parents. They are my family.**

你 屋 企 人

nei<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>

***Your family***

你 屋 企 人 住

nei<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> zyu<sub>6</sub>

***Your family lives***

你 屋 企 人 住 喺 邊 度？

nei<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> zyu<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

***Where does your family live?***

佢 哋 住 喺 美 國。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> zyu<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup>.

***They live in the United States.***

你有冇兄弟姊妹？

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> hing<sup>-1</sup> dai<sub>6</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> mui<sub>6</sub>?

**Do you have siblings?**

有。我有一個細佬，一個  
細妹。你呢？

jau<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>3</sub> sai<sub>3</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>, jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>3</sub> sai<sub>3</sub>  
mui<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

**Yes. I have a younger brother and a younger sister. What about you?**

冇。我有兄弟姊妹但係  
我有一隻貓。

mou<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> hing<sup>-1</sup> dai<sub>6</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> mui<sub>6</sub> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub>  
jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>3</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>.

**No. I don't have siblings but I have a cat.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

## ***Family Hierarchy***

In Cantonese, every family member in the family tree has a specific name, meaning that there are specific names for each member in both sides of the family. For now we will only focus on the ones mentioned in this quest. In addition, the family tree is hierarchical. So Males before Females, Older before Younger.

爸爸

baa<sub>4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup>

***Father***

媽媽

maa<sub>4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>

***Mother***

哥哥

go<sub>4</sub> go<sup>-1</sup>

***Older Brother***

姐 姐

ze<sub>4</sub> ze<sup>-1</sup>

**Older Sister**

細 佬

sai<sub>3</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Younger Brother**

細 妹

sai<sub>3</sub> mui<sup>-2</sup>

**Younger Sister**

**Switching The Word Placement Of: 住**

When using the word 住 (zyu<sub>-6</sub>), it can be placed either before 喺 (hai<sup>-2</sup>) or it can be placed at the end of the sentence.

你 住 喺 邊 度？

nei<sub>,5</sub> zyu<sub>-6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

**Where do you live?**

你 喺 邊 度 住？

nei<sub>,5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> zyu<sub>-6</sub>?

**Where do you live?**

我 住 喺 呢 度。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> zyu<sub>-6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

**I live here.**

我 喺 呢 度 住。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> zyu<sub>-6</sub>.

**I live here.**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

我爸爸好鍾意飲茶但係  
我想佢飲水。

乙

---

我爸爸都唔鍾意飲水但  
係我媽媽飲好多水。

甲

好好. 你爸爸媽媽喺邊  
度?

乙

佢哋兩個都喺屋企. 你  
嘅呢?

甲

佢哋而家喺學校.

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我爸爸好鍾意飲茶但係  
我想佢飲水。

ngo<sub>5</sub> baa<sub>4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>4</sub> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>  
ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-2</sup>.

***My Dad really likes to drink tea, but I want him to drink water.***

乙

我爸爸都唔鍾意飲水但  
係我媽媽飲好多水。

ngo<sub>5</sub> baa<sub>4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-2</sup> daan<sub>6</sub>  
hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> maa<sub>4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> sei<sup>-2</sup>.

***My Dad also doesn't like to drink water, but my Mom drinks  
a lot of water.***

甲

好好。你爸爸媽媽喺邊  
度？

hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> baa<sub>4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sub>4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

***Very good. Where are your parents?***

乙

佢哋兩個都喺屋企。你  
嘅呢？

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***They are both at home. What about yours?***

甲

佢哋而家喺學校。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>2</sup> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>1</sup> hai<sup>2</sup> hok<sub>6</sub> haau<sub>6</sub>.

***They are currently at the school.***



# 第四任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 4**

你要搭的士定係巴士

nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> daap<sub>-3</sub> dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

***You Need To Take The Taxi Or Bus***

車

ce<sup>-1</sup>

**Car**

一 架 車

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaa-3 ce<sup>-1</sup>

**A car**

一 架 巴 士

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaa-3 baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

**A bus**

一 架 的 士

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaa-3 dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

**A taxi**

佢 架 的 士 去 個 度 .

keoi<sub>5</sub> gaa<sub>3</sub> dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***His taxi goes there.***



我要搭的士。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>.

***I need to take a taxi.***

我要搭地鐵。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> dei<sub>6</sub> tit<sub>3</sub>.

***I need to take the train (underground train).***

飛

fei<sup>-1</sup>

**To fly**

機

gei<sup>-1</sup>

**Machine**

飛 機

fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

**Airplane (Flying Machine)**

佢 要 搭 飛 機 .

keoi<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup> fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>.

**She needs to take an airplane.**

佢要搭飛機去香港。

keoi<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup>.

***She needs to take an airplane to go to Hong Kong.***

我 哋 要 搭

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jiu<sup>-3</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup>

***We need to take***

我 哋 要 搭 巴 士 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jiu<sup>-3</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>.

***We need to take a bus.***

我 哋 要 搭 巴 士 去 朋 友 嘅  
屋 企 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jiu<sup>-3</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>  
uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>.

***We need to take a bus to go to our friend's house.***

站

zaam<sub>-6</sub>

**Station**

地鐵站

dei<sub>-6</sub> tit<sub>-3</sub> zaam<sub>-6</sub>

**Train Station**

巴士站

baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub>

**Bus Stop**

街

gai<sup>1</sup>

**Street**

一條街

jat<sup>1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> gai<sup>1</sup>

**A street**

呢條街

ni<sup>1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> gai<sup>1</sup>

**This street**

呢條街冇地鐵站。

ni<sup>1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> gai<sup>1</sup> mou<sub>5</sub> dei<sub>6</sub> tit<sub>3</sub> zaam<sub>6</sub>.

**This street doesn't have a train station.**

我會去。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub>.

***I will go***

我會去巴士站。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub>.

***I will go to the bus stop.***

我會去巴士站搭巴士。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub> daap<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>.

***I will go to the bus stop to take the bus.***

我會去巴士站搭巴士去  
朋友嘅屋企。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub> daap<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub>  
pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>.

***I will go to the bus stop to take the bus to go to my friend's house.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

## Using English In Hong Kong Cantonese

Since Hong Kong was a British Colony for about 100 years, there were a lot of English words that trickled into Cantonese, and were absorbed into the language with a Cantonese pronunciation. Some of these words don't have a corresponding Chinese equivalent character, and thus the Latin alphabet is used in these cases. Even though they are written with the Latin Alphabet, you'll still need to pronounce them with the Cantonese accent for it to be correct, or it won't be colloquial. Due to these historical developments, there are differences between Guangdong 廣東 (gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup>) Cantonese, and Hong Kong 香港 (hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup>) Cantonese, not just for some basic objects, but also in terms of slang. However, the two different Cantonese variants are still largely mutually intelligible. Below are some examples from the Hong Kong Cantonese perspective:

雲 呢 拿

wan<sub>6</sub> nei<sup>-1</sup> laa<sup>-2</sup>

**Vanilla**

士 多 啤 梨

si<sub>6</sub> do<sup>-1</sup> be<sup>-1</sup> lei<sup>-2</sup>

**Strawberry**

朱 古 力

zyu<sup>-1</sup> gu<sup>-1</sup> lik<sup>-1</sup>

**Chocolate**

的士

dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

**Taxi**

巴士

baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

**Bus**

多士

do<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

**Toast**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你而家會去邊度？

乙

我而家會去哥哥嘅屋  
企。

甲

你會唔會搭的士去個  
度？

乙

唔會。我會搭地鐵去個  
度。

甲

佢住喺邊度？

乙

佢住喺九十五街。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你 而 家 會 去 邊 度？

nei<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

***Where are you going now?***

乙

我 而 家 會 去 哥 哥 嘅 屋  
企。

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sub>-4</sub> go<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>.

***I'm going to my older brother's house now.***

甲

你 會 唔 會 搭 的 士 去 個  
度 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

***Are you going to take the taxi to go there?***

乙

唔 會 . 我 會 搭 地 鐵 去 個  
度 .

m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> dei<sub>6</sub> tit<sub>3</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***No. I'm going to take the train to go there.***

甲

佢住喺邊度？

keoi<sub>5</sub> zyu<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

**Where does he live?**

乙

佢住喺九十五街。

keoi<sub>5</sub> zyu<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup>.

**He lives on 95th street.**



# 第五任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 5

佢而家做緊乜嘢呀

keoi<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zou<sub>-6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>

***What Is He Doing Now***

呢 個

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

***This***

呢 個 係

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>

***This is***

呢 個 係 乜 嘢 呀？

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***What is this?***

呢 個 係 咩 呀？

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> me<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***What is this?***

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

你做

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub>

**You do**

你做乜嘢呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**What are you doing?**

你做緊乜嘢呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**What are you currently doing?**

你做緊咩？

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> me<sup>-1</sup>?

***What are you currently doing? (harsher tone)***

你做緊咩呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> me<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***What are you currently doing? (a little softer)***

你做緊乜嘢呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***What are you currently doing? (softest)***

咩

me<sup>-1</sup>

***(Ending Particle: Shows sarcasm or being surprised)***

係咩?

hai<sub>-6</sub> me<sup>-1</sup>?

***Really?***

如 果

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

*If*

如 果 你 唔 鍾 意

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub>

*If you don't like*

如 果 你 唔 鍾 意 飲 水

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-2</sup>

*If you don't like drinking water*

如 果 你 唔 鍾 意 飲 水 就

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-2</sup> zau<sub>6</sub>

*If you don't like drinking water then*

如果你唔鍾意飲水就飲  
茶。

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-2</sup> zau<sub>6</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>4</sub>.

***If you don't like drinking water then drink tea.***

我 睇

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup>

***I read***

我 睇 書 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I read a book.***

我 睇 書 ， 你 就 都 睇 書 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>5</sub> zau<sub>-6</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***As soon as I read a book, you also read a book.***

點 解

dim<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-2</sup>

**Why**

點 解 你 要 搭 飛 機 去 韓  
國 ？

dim<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup> fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> hon<sub>4</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup>?

***Why do you need to take an airplane to go to Korea?***

因為

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub>

**Because**

因為我要去韓國

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> hon<sub>-4</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub>

**Because I need to go to Korea**

因為我要去韓國探朋友。

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> hon<sub>-4</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub> taam<sub>-3</sub> pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

**Because I need to go to Korea to visit friends.**

我 哋

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>

**We**

我 哋 一 齊

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> cai<sub>4</sub>

**Together we**

我 哋 一 齊 去 韓 國 探 朋  
友。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> cai<sub>4</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> hon<sub>4</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup> taam<sup>-3</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

**Together we go to Korea to visit friends.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

### Ending Particles: 呀 + 咩

One of the most unique and flavorful parts of Cantonese is its wide use of Ending Particles. These particles are added to the end of a statement, and tend to express some sort of additional meaning or tone of the sentence/speaker. I almost like to think of these as some sort of enhanced punctuation system. One that goes deeper than a simple question mark or exclamation mark (?, !). This system allows for deeper feelings, tones, and emotions to be written down **on paper**, and to some extent recorded and expressed **in writing**. You can usually say the same thing without the ending particles, but the sentence may sound dryer and more abrupt. The ending particles can help to soften or **lighten up** the sentence. They can also be used to make the sentence sound stronger or more intense as well. You will be introduced to more ending particles in the future. But for now we can discuss two of them: 呀 (aa<sub>4</sub>) and 咩 (me<sup>-1</sup>). At a basic level, 呀 (aa<sub>4</sub>) can be used when you are asking any question. 咩 (me<sup>-1</sup>) is sometimes used when you are surprised about something and want to express that further. It can also be used in a sarcastic way.

你 係 唔 係 一 隻 龍 貓 呀 ?

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>3</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**Are you a Chinchilla?**

係 . 我 係 一 隻 龍 貓 .

hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>3</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>.

**Yes. I'm a Chinchilla.**

係 咩 ?!

hai<sub>6</sub> me<sup>-1</sup>?!

**Really?!**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你哥哥鍾意做乜嘢呀？

乙

佢鍾意睇書。佢都鍾意  
食香蕉。

甲

係咩？我都鍾意食香蕉，  
但係你鍾意做乜嘢呀？

乙

我鍾意睇書。我同朋友  
一齊睇書。

甲

你哋睇緊邊本書？

乙

我哋睇緊龍貓嘅書。

甲

---

你哋點解鐘意睇龍貓嘅  
書？

乙

---

我哋鐘意龍貓嘅書因為  
我哋好鍾意龍貓。

甲

---

我都鍾意龍貓嘅書。我

就想睇你哋嘅書。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你 哥 哥 鍾 意 做 乜 嘢 呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> go<sub>4</sub> go<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***What does your older brother like to do?***

乙

佢 鍾 意 睇 書。佢 都 鍾 意  
食 香 蕉。

keoi<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>. keoi<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>3</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>  
hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>.

***He likes to read books. He also likes to eat bananas.***

甲

係咩？我都鍾意食香蕉，  
但係你鍾意做乜嘢呀？

hai<sub>-6</sub> me<sup>-1</sup>? ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>, daan<sub>-6</sub>  
hai<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> zou<sub>-6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***Really? I also like to eat bananas, but what do you like to do?***

乙

我鍾意睇書。我同朋友  
一齊睇書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> tung<sub>-4</sub> pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>  
cai<sub>-4</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like to read books. My friend and I read books together.***

甲

你 哋 睇 緊 邊 本 書 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

***What book are you two currently reading?***

乙

我 哋 睇 緊 龍 貓 嘅 書 。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***We are currently reading a chinchilla book.***

甲

你 哋 點 解 鐘 意 睇 龍 貓 嘅  
書 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>  
ge<sup>-3</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

***Why do both of you like to read a chinchilla book?***

乙

我 哋 鐘 意 龍 貓 嘅 書 因 為  
我 哋 好 鍾 意 龍 貓 。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>6</sub>  
ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>.

***We like the chinchilla book because we like chinchillas very much.***

甲

我 都 鍾 意 龍 貓 嘅 書 . 我  
就 想 睇 你 哋 嘅 書 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> lung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> zau<sub>-6</sub>  
soeng<sup>-2</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I also like the chinchilla book, so I want to read the book both  
of you are reading.***



# 第六任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 6

嗰架車係乜嘢顏色

go<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sub>-3</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>-5</sub> ngaan<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

***What Color Is That Car***

顏色

ngaan<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Color**

紅色

hung<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Red**

綠色

luk<sub>6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Green**

藍色

laam<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Blue**

黃色

wong<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Yellow**

金色

gam<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Gold**

銀色

ngan<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Silver**

白色

baak<sub>6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**White**

黑色

hak<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Black**

橙色

caang<sup>-2</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Orange**

紫色

zi<sup>-2</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Purple**

粉紅色

fan<sup>-2</sup> hung<sup>-4</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Pink**

啡 色

fe<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Brown**

灰 色

fui<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Gray**

你 鍾 意

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub>

***You like***

你 鍾 意 邊 個

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub>

***You like which***

你 鍾 意 邊 個 顏 色 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> ngaan<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>?

***Which color do you like?***

我 鍾 意 藍 色 ， 但 係 我 細  
佬 鍾 意 紅 色 。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> laam<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>, daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> sai<sub>-3</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>  
zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> hung<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>.

***I like blue, but my younger brother likes red.***

個 架 車

go<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>

***That car***

個 架 車 嘅 顏 色

go<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> ngaan<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

***That car's color***

個 架 車 嘅 顏 色 係 乜 嘢  
呀？

go<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> ngaan<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***What color is that car?***

個 架 車 係 黑 色 嘅。

go<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hak<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>.

***That color is black.***

呢 架 車

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaa-3 ce<sup>-1</sup>

***This car***

呢 架 車 好

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaa-3 ce<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>

***This car is very***

呢 架 車 好 紅 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaa-3 ce<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> hung<sup>-4</sup>.

***This car is very red.***

嗰 啲

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

**Those**

嗰 啲 黑 色 啲 書

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> hak<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

**Those black books**

嗰 啲 黑 色 啲 書 好 黑。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> hak<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> hak<sup>-1</sup>.

**Those black books are very black.**

香蕉

hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

**Banana**

一條香蕉

jat<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

**A banana**

呢條香蕉

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

**This banana**

呢條香蕉好黃。

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> wong<sub>-4</sub>.

**This banana is very yellow.**

魚

jyu<sub>4</sub>

**Fish**

一條魚

jat<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub>

**A fish**

呢條魚

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub>

**This fish**

呢條魚好藍。

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> laam<sub>4</sub>.

**This fish is very blue.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

## Colors

Colors are relatively straight forward. If we take green for example, green itself is 綠色 (luk<sub>-6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>), however, if we want to use it as an adjective, maybe to describe some object, then we drop the 色 (sik<sup>-1</sup>) part and just use the color directly. Since the color is considered a possessive property of the word, you use 嘅 (ge<sup>-3</sup>) to finish the connection. Take a look at the following examples:

嗰條香蕉係乜嘢顏色？

go<sup>-2</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>-5</sub> ngaan<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>?

***What color is that banana?***

嗰條香蕉係綠色嘅。

go<sup>-2</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>.

***That banana is green.***

嗰條香蕉好綠。

go<sup>-2</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> luk<sub>-6</sub>.

***That banana is very green.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

嗰架車好藍。唔鐘意嗰  
個顏色。你呢？

乙

---

我都唔鐘意。我鍾意黃色  
嘅但係喺呢度冇黃色  
嘅車。

甲

---

呢度冇黃色嘅車但係有  
黃色嘅魚。

乙

---

我好鍾意呢條魚。條魚  
好靚。

甲

---

我同意。佢好靚。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

嗰架車好藍。唔鐘意嗰  
個顏色。你呢？

go<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> laam<sub>4</sub>. m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>  
ngaan<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup>?

***That car is very blue. I don't like that color. What about you?***

乙

我都唔鐘意。我鍾意黃色  
嘅但係喺呢度冇黃色  
嘅車。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> wong<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>  
daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> wong<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

***I also don't like it. I like the yellow cars, but there are no  
yellow cars here.***

甲

呢度冇黃色嘅車但係有  
黃色嘅魚。

ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-5</sub> wong<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> jau<sub>-5</sub>  
wong<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> jyu<sub>-4</sub>.

***There are no yellow cars here, but there is a yellow fish.***

乙

我好鍾意呢條魚。條魚  
好靚。

ngo<sub>-5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>-4</sub> jyu<sub>-4</sub>. tiu<sub>-4</sub> jyu<sub>-4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sup>-3</sup>.

***I really like this fish. The fish is very beautiful.***

甲

我同意。佢好靚。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tung<sub>4</sub> ji<sub>3</sub>. keoi<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sub>3</sub>.

***I agree. It's very beautiful.***



第三幕

dai<sub>6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> mok<sub>6</sub>

**Act 3**

深樹灣

sam<sup>-1</sup> syu<sub>6</sub> waan<sup>-1</sup>

**Deep Tree Bay**

# 第一任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 1**

# 你識唔識講廣東話

nei<sub>-5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup>

## ***Do You Know How To Speak Cantonese***

知

zi<sup>-1</sup>

***To know (A piece of information)***

你 知 唔 知

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>

***Do you know***

你 知 唔 知 呢 本 書

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>

***Do you know this book***

你 知 唔 知 呢 本 書 幾 多 錢  
呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Do you know how much this book costs?***

識

sik<sup>-1</sup>

**To know (A person or a skill)**

你 識 唔 識

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Do you know**

你 識 唔 識 講

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup>

**Do you know how to speak**

你 識 唔 識 講 廣 東 話 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup>?

**Do you know how to speak Cantonese?**

識·我識講廣東話·

sik<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup>.

***I know. I know how to speak Cantonese.***

唔識·我唔識講廣東話·

m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup>.

***I don't know. I don't know how to speak Cantonese.***

你 識 唔 識

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

***Do you know***

你 識 唔 識 佢 係 邊 個 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> ?

***Do you know who is that?***

唔 識 . 我 唔 識 佢 係 我 朋  
友 識 .

m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>.

***I don't know. I don't know but my friend does.***

雖然

seoi<sup>-1</sup> jin<sub>~4</sub>

**Although**

我雖然

ngo<sub>~5</sub> seoi<sup>-1</sup> jin<sub>~4</sub>

**Although I**

我雖然鍾意飲水

ngo<sub>~5</sub> seoi<sup>-1</sup> jin<sub>~4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup>

**Although I like drinking water**

我雖然鍾意飲水，我有  
水飲。

ngo<sub>~5</sub> seoi<sup>-1</sup> jin<sub>~4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup>, ngo<sub>~5</sub> mou<sub>~5</sub>  
seoi<sup>-2</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup>.

**Although I like drinking water, I have no water to drink.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Differences Between:** 知 + 識

In Cantonese there are different ways to ask someone if they know something. The verb to use for this depends on what type of information you are asking about.

知 (zi<sup>-1</sup>) is used for informational stuff like if you want to know what's the weather today, if someone likes something, if there is some event happening, etc. 識 (sik<sup>-1</sup>) is used if you want to know if someone knows some person, or some type of skill (like if they speak can speak a certain language or know how to play some sport).

我 識 游 水 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>4</sub> seoi<sup>-2</sup>.

***I know how to swim.***

我 識 講 廣 東 話 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup>.

***I know how to speak Cantonese.***

我 知 我 唔 知 好 多 嘢 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub>.

***I know I don't know a lot of stuff.***

你 知 我 係 邊 個 .

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>.

***You know who I am.***

有 / 冇 + **Noun + Verb**

You can say whether you have or don't have a particular object in order to perform some action by using 有 (jau<sub>5</sub>) / 冇 (mou<sub>5</sub>), then the particular noun in question, and the verb at the end in order to express that.

我冇書睇。

ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup>.

***I have no books to read.***

佢哋冇嘢飲。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> mou<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup>.

***They have nothing to drink.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你知唔知八十六街喺邊  
度呀？

乙

八十六街喺嗰度。

甲

知唔知如果八十六街有  
好多人？

乙

唔知。

甲

你識唔識嗰個人係邊個

呀？

乙

我雖然識佢，佢唔識我。

甲

---

點解？

乙

---

因為佢係我朋友嘅朋友。  
友。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你知唔知八十六街喺邊  
度呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> baat<sub>-3</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup>  
dou<sub>-6</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Do you know where 86 st is?***

乙

八十六街喺個度。

baat<sub>-3</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***86 st is over there.***

甲

知 唔 知 如 果 八 十 六 街 有  
好 多 人 ？

zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> jyu<sub>~4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> baat<sup>-3</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>~5</sub>  
hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>~4</sub>?

***Do you know if 86 st has a lot of people?***

乙

唔 知 .

m<sub>~4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>.

***I don't know.***

甲

你識唔識嗰個人係邊個  
呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Do you know who that person is?***

乙

我雖然識佢，佢唔識我。

ngo<sub>5</sub> seoi<sup>-1</sup> jin<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub>, keoi<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub>.

***Although I know them, they don't know me.***

甲

點解？

dim<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-2</sup>?

**Why?**

乙

因為佢係我朋友嘅朋友。

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>6</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***Because they are my friend's friend.***



# 第二任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 2

唔該，我點去公園

m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, ngo<sub>5</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup>

***Excuse Me, How Do I Get To The Park***

唔 該

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>

***Thank you (Service, Assistance). Excuse Me.***

唔 使

m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>

***You are welcome (lit. No need)***

唔 該, 你 知 唔 知

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>

***Excuse me, do you know***

唔 該, 你 知 唔 知 公 園

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup>

***Excuse me, do you know park***

唔該，你知唔知公園喺  
邊度呀？

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup>  
dou<sub>6</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**Excuse me, do you know where the park is?**

知．公園喺六十街．

zi<sup>-1</sup>. gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> luk<sub>6</sub> sap<sub>6</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup>.

**Yes. The park is at 60th st.**

唔該．

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>.

**Thank you**

唔使．

m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>.

**You're welcome.**

點

dim<sup>-2</sup>

**How**

你 知 唔 知 點

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup>

**Do you know how**

你 知 唔 知 點 去 公 園 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup>?

**Do you know how to go to the park?**

知 . 你 要 搭 巴 士 去 個 度 .

zi<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

**I do. You need to take the bus to go there.**

寫

se<sup>-2</sup>

**To write**

你 寫

nei<sub>5</sub> se<sup>-2</sup>

**You write**

你 寫 字

nei<sub>5</sub> se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>-6</sub>

**You write character(s)**

你 知 唔 知 點 寫 字

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>-6</sub>

**Do you know how to write character(s)**

你知唔知點寫呢個字？

nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> se<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>3</sub> zi<sub>6</sub>?

***Do you know how to write this character?***

多 謝

do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sup>-6</sup>

**Thank you (Gifts, Compliments)**

你 嘅

nei<sup>5</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>

**Your**

你 嘅 廣 東 話

nei<sup>5</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup>

**Your Cantonese**

你 嘅 廣 東 話 好 好 .

nei<sup>5</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> gwong<sup>-2</sup> dung<sup>-1</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>.

**Your Cantonese is very good.**

多謝。

do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub>.

***Thank you.***

真

zan<sup>-1</sup>

**Real. Really.**

真 係

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>

**Really is**

呢 個 人 真 係

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub> zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>

**This person really is**

呢 個 人 真 係 好 靚 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub> zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sub>-3</sub>.

**This person really is beautiful.**

你 識 唔 識 佢?

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub>?

**Do you know them?**

識。

sik<sup>-1</sup>.

**I do.**

真 係?!

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>?!

**Really?!**

我 想

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup>

***I want***

我 想 同 埋 你

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tung<sub>4</sub> maai<sub>4</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>

***I want to with you***

我 想 同 埋 你 一 齊 去

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tung<sub>4</sub> maai<sub>4</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> cai<sub>4</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup>

***I want to go together with you***

我 想 同 埋 你 一 齊 去 博 物  
館 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tung<sub>4</sub> maai<sub>4</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> cai<sub>4</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> bok<sup>-3</sup>  
mat<sub>6</sub> gun<sup>-2</sup>.

***I want to go together with you to the museum.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Excuse Me / Thank You / You're Welcome:** 唔該 + 多謝 + 唔使

In Cantonese there are two ways to say **Thank you**, 唔該 (m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>) is used when someone is helping you with something (maybe holding the door for you or passing the salt), and 多謝 (do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>6</sub>) is used for things that may be more intangible, like giving you a compliment, or giving you a gift (possibly due to the thought of gift giving). At the same time, 唔該 (m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>) is also used when you want to say Excuse Me. If you want to say **You're welcome**, you can use 唔使 (m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>), which means **No need**. This can be added before both of the above **Thanks** to express that you are welcome.

唔該，你有冇一枝筆呀？

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> bat<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**Excuse me, do you have a pen?**

有。

jau<sub>5</sub>.

**I do.**

唔該。

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>.

**Thank you.**

唔使多謝。

m<sub>~4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub>.

***You're welcome.***

你好靚。

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sub>-3</sub>.

***You are beautiful.***

多謝。

do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub>.

***Thank you.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

唔該，我想去一百一十五街嘅公園但係我唔知點去嗰度。你知唔知呀？

乙

---

知。你要搭的士去嗰度。

甲

---

唔該。

乙

---

唔使唔該。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

唔該，我想去一百一十五街嘅公園但係我唔知點去嗰度。你知唔知呀？

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> baak<sub>3</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub>  
gaai<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>3</sub> gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup>  
heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Excuse me, I want to go to the park that's on 115th st, but I don't know how to go there. Do you know?***

乙

知。你要搭的士去嗰度。

zi<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***I do. You need to take the taxi there.***

甲

唔 該。

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>.

**Thank you.**

乙

唔 使 唔 該。

m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>.

**You're welcome.**



# 第三任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 3

請等陣。唔該晒。

cing<sup>-2</sup> dang<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup> saai<sub>-3</sub>.

***Please Wait A Moment. Thank You Very Much.***

可以

ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub>

**To be able to**

你可唔可以

nei<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub>

**Are you able to**

你可唔可以買

nei<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub>

**Are you able to buy**

你可唔可以買呢本書?

nei<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

**Are you able to buy this book?**

我唔可以買呢本書因為  
我有錢。

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub>  
mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>4</sub>.

***I'm not able to buy this book because I don't have money.***

我 冇 錢

ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>4</sub>

***I don't have money***

我 冇 錢 所 以

ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>4</sub> so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub>

***I don't have money so***

我 冇 錢 所 以 唔 會 去 個  
度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> cin<sub>4</sub> so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***I don't have money so I'm not going there.***

飽

baau<sup>2</sup>

***To be full (stomach)***

我好飽。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>2</sup> baau<sup>2</sup>.

***I'm full.***

肚餓

tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub>

***Hungry***

我肚餓。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub>.

***I'm hungry.***

我好肚餓。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>2</sup> tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub>.

***I'm very hungry.***

到

dou<sup>-2</sup>

***(Action was able to be completed successfully)***

我 食 到

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>

***I was able to eat***

我 食 唔 到

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>

***I wasn't able to eat***

我 食 唔 到 嘢 食

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>

***I wasn't able to eat the food***

我食唔到嘢食因為我好  
飽。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> baau<sup>-2</sup>.

***I wasn't able to eat the food because I was full.***

等

dang<sup>-2</sup>

**To wait**

一 陣

jat<sup>-1</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>

**A moment**

等 陣

dang<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>

**Wait a moment**

嗰 陣

go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>

**When. At that moment.**

我等巴士嗰陣

ngo<sub>5</sub> dang<sup>-2</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>

***When I was waiting for the bus***

我等巴士嗰陣睇到一本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dang<sup>-2</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***When I was waiting for the bus, I was able to read a book.***

我等巴士嘅時候睇到一本書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> dang<sup>-2</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> si<sub>-4</sub> hau<sub>-6</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup>  
bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***When I was waiting for the bus, I was able to read a book.***

覺得

gok-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>

***To think. To feel.***

我覺得

ngo,5 gok-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>

***I feel***

我覺得佢唔鍾意

ngo,5 gok-3 dak<sup>-1</sup> keoi,5 m,4 zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3

***I feel that he doesn't like***

我覺得佢唔鍾意呢本書。

ngo,5 gok-3 dak<sup>-1</sup> keoi,5 m,4 zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I feel that he doesn't like this book.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Different Ways Of Saying "When": 嗰陣 + 嘅時候**

If you want to say **When**, you can use either 嗰陣 (go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>) or 嘅時候 (ge<sup>-3</sup> si<sub>-4</sub> hau<sub>-6</sub>), they are interchangeable.

我 喺 嗰 度 嗰 陣 ...

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>...

**When I was there ...**

我 喺 嗰 度 嘅 時 候 ...

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> si<sub>-4</sub> hau<sub>-6</sub>...

**When I was there ...**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

我 覺 得 我 朋 友 唔 會 鍾 意  
呢 本 書 所 以 我 唔 會 買  
佢 .

乙

---

如 果 佢 唔 會 鍾 意 呢 本  
書 , 你 會 買 乜 嘢 呀 ?

甲

---

我唔知。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我 覺 得 我 朋 友 唔 會 鍾 意  
呢 本 書 所 以 我 唔 會 買  
佢。

ngo<sub>5</sub> gok<sup>-3</sup> dak<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup>  
ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub>.

***I think that my friend is not going to like this book, so I'm not going to buy it.***

乙

如 果 佢 唔 會 鍾 意 呢 本  
書，你 會 買 乜 嘢 呀？

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>,  
nei<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***If they aren't going to like this book, what are you going to buy?***

甲

我 唔 知。

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>.

***I don't know.***



# 第四任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 4**

# 你有冇去過越南

nei<sub>,5</sub> jau<sub>,5</sub> mou<sub>,5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gwo<sub>-3</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub> naam<sub>-4</sub>

***Have You Ever Been To Vietnam***

我

ngo<sub>5</sub>

**I**

我 仲

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sub>6</sub>

**I still**

我 仲 有 呢 本 書 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sub>6</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**I still have this book.**

未

mei<sub>-6</sub>

***(Action has not yet happened)***

我 仲 未

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sub>-6</sub> mei<sub>-6</sub>

***I still haven't yet***

我 仲 未 睇 呢 本 書 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sub>-6</sub> mei<sub>-6</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I still haven't yet read this book.***

先

sin<sup>-1</sup>

***(To do something first)***

我 食 先 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

***I will eat first.***

我 食 飯 先 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

***I will eat dinner first.***

之前

zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>

**Before**

我食飯之前

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>

**Before I eat dinner**

我食飯之前會飲果汁  
先。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

**Before I eat dinner, I will drink juice first.**

之後

zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub>

**After**

我食飯之後

ngo<sub>,5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub>

**After I eat dinner**

我食飯之後會飲果汁。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>.

**After I eat dinner, I will drink juice.**

過

gwo-3

***(Action was previously experienced in the past)***

你 有 冇 去 過

nei,5 jau,5 mou,5 heoi-3 gwo-3

***Have you ever gone to***

你 有 冇 去 過 越 南 ？

nei,5 jau,5 mou,5 heoi-3 gwo-3 jyut-6 naam-4?

***Have you ever gone to Vietnam?***

有 . 我 去 過 越 南 .

jau,5 ngo,5 heoi-3 gwo-3 jyut-6 naam-4.

***Yes. I've gone to Vietnam.***

冇·我未去過越南·

mou<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> mei<sub>6</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> gwo<sub>3</sub> jyut<sub>6</sub> naam<sub>4</sub>·

***No. I haven't gone to Vietnam yet.***

晒

saai-3

***(Action is done but some other related action may still happen)***

你 食 晒

nei\_5 sik\_6 saai-3

***I ate all of it***

你 食 唔 晒

nei\_5 sik\_6 m\_4 saai-3

***I was not able to eat all of it***

你 食 唔 晒 未 呀？

nei\_5 sik\_6 m\_4 saai-3 mei\_6 aa\_4?

***You still aren't done eating all of it yet? (Are you almost done?)***

未食晒。仲有好多嘢食。

mei<sub>-6</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> saai<sub>-3</sub>. zung<sub>-6</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>.

***I haven't finished eating all of it yet. I still have a lot to eat.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**To Have Experienced Something: 過**

If you want to ask someone if they've ever done something before, you use 過 (gwo-3). You can combine this with 有冇 (jau,5 mou,5) to ask your question: have you or have you not ever X. You reply using 有 (jau,5) or 冇 (mou,5).

你有冇食過芒果?

nei,5 jau,5 mou,5 sik,6 gwo-3 mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>?

**Have you ever eaten mangos before?**

有。我食過芒果。

jau,5. ngo,5 sik,6 gwo-3 mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

**I have. I've eaten mangos.**

冇。我冇食過芒果。

mou,5. ngo,5 mou,5 sik,6 gwo-3 mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

**I haven't. I haven't eaten mangos.**

**Differences Between: 過 + 咗 + 晒**

Cantonese has multiple ways for expressing different types of ideas and even actions. In this particular case, 過 (gwo-3), 咗 (zo-2), and 晒 (saai-3) refer to different aspects of completion or experience. We use 過 (gwo-3) when dealing with things that have been experienced in the past (like at some point in your life). 咗 (zo-2) is used when an action has been completed (recently). 晒 (saai-3) can be used when stating that something has been completed but there may be more related actions that still have yet to come but will be completed soon. Usually 晒 (saai-3) can be used when dealing with a group of objects.

我食過芒果。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> gwo-3 mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***I've eaten mangos before.***

我食咗芒果。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***I finished eating the mango.***

我食晒芒果。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> saai-3 mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***I ate the mangos.***

***You Aren't X Yet: Noun Verb X 未呀***

When you want to ask someone if they haven't finished doing something that you expected them to have already done, you can use the pattern: **Noun Verb X 未呀** (mei<sub>-6</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>)?

你食咗芒果未呀?

nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> zo<sub>-2</sub> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sub>-2</sub> mei<sub>-6</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***You haven't finished eating the mango yet?***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

我真係好想食呢個蘋果

但係而家唔可以。

乙

---

點解？

甲

---

因為我要睇書先之後可

以食。

乙

---

但係你睇書之前都可以  
食蘋果先。

甲

---

好。我會食蘋果先。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我真係好想食呢個蘋果  
但係而家唔可以。

ngo<sub>5</sub> zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>3</sub> ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>  
daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub>.

*I really want to eat this apple but I can't right now.*

乙

點解？

dim<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-2</sup>?

**Why?**

甲

因為我要睇書先之後可以食。

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup>  
ji<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>.

***Because I need to read this book first and then I can eat.***

乙

但係你睇書之前都可以食蘋果先。

daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>  
ping<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

***But before you read you can also eat the apple first.***

甲

好· 我 會 食 蘋 果 先·

hou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> ping<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

***Ok. I will eat the apple first.***



# 第五任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 5

佢 喺 我 朋友 嘅 隔離

keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> gaak<sub>-3</sub> lei<sub>-4</sub>

***She Is Next To My Friend***

店

dim-3

**Store (Shop)**

一間店

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> dim-3

**A store**

一間書店

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> dim-3

**A book store**

枱

toi<sub>4</sub>

**Table**

一 張 枱

jat<sup>-1</sup> zoeng<sup>-1</sup> toi<sub>4</sub>

**A table**

電

din<sub>-6</sub>

**Electricity**

視

si<sub>-6</sub>

**Sight**

電 視

din<sub>-6</sub> si<sub>-6</sub>

**Television (Electric Sight)**

一 部 電 視

jat<sup>-1</sup> bou<sub>-6</sub> din<sub>-6</sub> si<sub>-6</sub>

**A Television**

電

din<sub>-6</sub>

**Electricity**

腦

nou<sub>5</sub>

**Brain**

電 腦

din<sub>-6</sub> nou<sub>5</sub>

**Computer (Electric Brain)**

一 部 電 腦

jat<sup>-1</sup> bou<sub>-6</sub> din<sub>-6</sub> nou<sub>5</sub>

**A computer**

電

din<sub>-6</sub>

**Electricity**

話

waa<sup>-2</sup>

**Speech**

電 話

din<sub>-6</sub> waa<sup>-2</sup>

**Telephone (Electric Speech)**

一 部 電 話

jat<sup>-1</sup> bou<sub>-6</sub> din<sub>-6</sub> waa<sup>-2</sup>

門

mun<sub>4</sub>

**Door**

口

hau<sup>2</sup>

**Mouth**

門 口

mun<sub>4</sub> hau<sup>2</sup>

**Entrance**

一 個 門 口

jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>3</sub> mun<sub>4</sub> hau<sup>2</sup>

**An entrance**

出

ceot<sup>-1</sup>

**To go out**

口

hau<sup>-2</sup>

**Mouth**

出 口

ceot<sup>-1</sup> hau<sup>-2</sup>

**Exit**

一 個 出 口

jat<sup>-1</sup> go-3 ceot<sup>-1</sup> hau<sup>-2</sup>

**An exit**

樓

lau<sub>4</sub>

**Building**

一間樓

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> lau<sub>4</sub>

**A building**

嗰間樓

go<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> lau<sub>4</sub>

**That building**

嗰間樓嘅門口好紅。

go<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> lau<sub>4</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> mun<sub>4</sub> hau<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> hung<sub>4</sub>.

**That building's entrance is very red.**

出

ceot<sup>-1</sup>

***To go out***

出 去

ceot<sup>-1</sup> heoi-3

***To go out (leaving outwards from the current spot to go to another spot)***

我 會 出 去 先 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> ceot<sup>-1</sup> heoi-3 sin<sup>-1</sup>.

***I will go out first.***

出

ceot<sup>-1</sup>

**To go out**

嚟

lai<sub>-4</sub>

**To come**

出 嚟

ceot<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>-4</sub>

**To go back (leaving outwards from the current spot to go back  
to another spot)**

你 出 嚟 之 前

nei<sub>-5</sub> ceot<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>-4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>

**Before you come back**

你 出 嚟 之 前 飲 水 先 .

nei<sub>5</sub> ceot<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

***Before you come back, drink water first.***

返

faan<sup>-1</sup>

**To return**

返 去

faan<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup>

**To go and return (to return to their original location by leaving their current location outwards)**

你 返 去 之 前

nei<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub>

**Before you return**

你 返 去 之 前 飲 茶 先

nei<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>4</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>

**Before you return, drink some tea first.**

返

faan<sup>-1</sup>

**To return**

返嚟

faan<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>4</sub>

**To return back (to return back to the speaker's location)**

你返嚟之前

nei<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub>

**Before you return back**

你返嚟之前食嘢先

nei<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>

**Before you return back, eat something first.**

前

cin<sub>-4</sub>

**Before / In Front**

後

hau<sub>-6</sub>

**After / Behind**

便

bin<sub>-6</sub>

**Side**

邊

bin<sup>-1</sup>

**Side**

我 喺 你 嘅 前 邊。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm in front of you.***

我 喺 你 嘅 後 邊。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> hau<sub>6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm behind you.***

面

min<sub>-6</sub>

**Side. Face.**

我 喺 你 嘅 前 面

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub> min<sub>-6</sub>

***I'm in front of you.***

我 喺 你 嘅 後 面

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> min<sub>-6</sub>

***I'm behind you.***

左

zo<sup>-2</sup>

**Left**

右

jau<sup>-2</sup>

**Right**

上

soeng<sub>-6</sub>

**Top. Above.**

下

haa<sub>-6</sub>

**Bottom. Below.**

我 嘅 電 腦 喺 枱 上

ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> din<sub>6</sub> nou<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>2</sup> toi<sub>4</sub> soeng<sub>6</sub>

***My computer is on top of the table.***

我 嘅 電 話 喺 枱 下

ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> din<sub>6</sub> waa<sup>2</sup> hai<sup>2</sup> toi<sub>4</sub> haa<sub>6</sub>

***My phone is under the table.***

外

ngoi<sub>-6</sub>

**Outer. External.**

外國

ngoi<sub>-6</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub>

**Foreign Country (Outer Country)**

外國人

ngoi<sub>-6</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub>

**Foreigner (Outer Country Person)**

佢哋係外國人。

keoi<sub>-5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngoi<sub>-6</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub>.

**They are foreigners.**

嗰 啲

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

**Those**

嗰 啲 人 喺 外 面

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ngoi<sub>6</sub> min<sub>6</sub>

**Those people outside**

嗰 啲 人 喺 外 面 係 外 國  
人。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ngoi<sub>6</sub> min<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngoi<sub>6</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

**Those people outside are foreigners.**

內

noi<sub>-6</sub>

***Inside. Internal.***

喺 雪 櫃 內 面

hai<sup>-2</sup> syut<sup>-3</sup> gwai<sub>-6</sub> noi<sub>-6</sub> min<sub>-6</sub>

***Inside the refrigerator***

我 嘅 蘋 果 汁 喺 雪 櫃 內  
面

ngo<sub>,5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> ping<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> syut<sup>-3</sup> gwai<sub>-6</sub> noi<sub>-6</sub> min<sub>-6</sub>

***My apple juice is inside the refrigerator.***

隔離

gaak-3 lei-4

**Next To**

喺我朋友嘅隔離

hai-2 ngo,5 pang-4 jau,5 ge-3 gaak-3 lei-4

**Next to my friend**

佢喺我朋友嘅隔離。

keoi,5 hai-2 ngo,5 pang-4 jau,5 ge-3 gaak-3 lei-4.

**She is next to my friend.**

中間

zung<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup>

***In the middle***

喺嗰啲樓嘅中間

hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> lau<sub>4</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup>

***In the middle of those buildings***

佢等緊你喺嗰啲樓嘅中間。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dang<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> lau<sub>4</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup>.

***He is waiting for you in the middle of those buildings.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

## The Sound Of 嚟

In the beginning of the 粵卷 (jyut<sub>-6</sub> gyun<sup>-2</sup>), I mentioned that there are some pronunciation differences that are usually said differently than what the standard shows. In this case, this applies to 嚟 (lai<sub>-4</sub>). Normally it should be pronounced as lai<sub>-4</sub>, but in a lot of situations you will hear it pronounced as lei<sub>-4</sub> instead.

地鐵就嚟啦。

dei<sub>-6</sub> tit<sup>-3</sup> zau<sub>-6</sub> lei<sub>-4</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

**The train is almost here.**

你返嚟之前買啲芒果先。

nei<sub>-5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> lei<sub>-4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub> maai<sub>-5</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

**Before you come, buy some mangos first.**

**Side/Face:** 面 + 邊 + 便

When saying things like inside/outside, in front of/behind, you can use either 邊 (bin<sup>-1</sup>), 便 (bin<sub>-6</sub>), or 面 (min<sub>-6</sub>) interchangeably.

嗰本書喺書店內邊。

go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-3</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> bin<sup>-1</sup>.

***That book is inside the book store.***

嗰本書喺書店內便。

go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-3</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> bin<sub>-6</sub>.

***That book is inside the book store.***

嗰本書喺書店內面。

go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-3</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> min<sub>-6</sub>.

***That book is inside the book store.***

**Positional / Directional Movements:** 出 + 返 + 去 + 嚟

The directional and positional movements in Cantonese are relative to the position of the source location, and destination, and also depends on the intention. Meaning that if you are trying to return back somewhere it could be express different depending on if you are leaving the location to return somewhere you've previously been to, or if you are moving towards something, they are said slightly differently.

我 返 去 美 國 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup>.

***I'm returning back to the United States. (returning back towards the US)***

我 出 去 美 國 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ceot<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup>.

***I'm going to the United States. (going towards the US)***

我 返 嚟 美 國 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>4</sub> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup>.

***I'm coming back to the United States. (returning back to the US)***

我 出 嚟 美 國 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ceot<sup>-1</sup> lai<sub>4</sub> mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup>.

***I'm going back to the United States. (going back towards the US)***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你朋友喺邊度呀？

乙

我朋友喺書店內便。佢  
買緊書。

甲

佢嘅書喺邊度？

乙

佢嘅書喺枱上。

甲

佢而家返緊嚟我哋。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你朋友喺邊度呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Where is your friend?***

乙

我朋友喺書店內便。佢  
買緊書。

ngo<sub>5</sub> pang<sub>4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> dim<sub>3</sub> noi<sub>6</sub> bin<sub>6</sub>. keoi<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub>  
gan<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***My friend is inside the book store. She is buying book(s).***

甲

佢嘅書喺邊度？

keoi<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

***Where is her book?***

乙

佢嘅書喺枱上。

keoi<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> toi<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sub>-6</sub>.

***Her book is on top of the table.***

甲

佢而家返緊嚟我哋。

keoi<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> faan<sup>-1</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> lai<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>.

*She is coming back to us now.*



# 第六任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 6

等我睇吓我地圖先

dang<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> haa<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>

***Let Me Take A Look At My Map First***

俾

bei<sup>-2</sup>

**To give**

俾 啲 個 蘋 果

bei<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> ping<sub>~4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

**Give that apple**

俾 啲 個 蘋 果 我

bei<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> ping<sub>~4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>~5</sub>

**Give that apple to me**

唔 該， 你 可 唔 可 以 俾 啲  
個 蘋 果 我？

m<sub>~4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>~5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>~5</sub> bei<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> ping<sub>~4</sub>  
gwo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>~5</sub>?

**Excuse me, are you able to give that apple to me?**

幫

bong<sup>-1</sup>

**To help**

幫 我

bong<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub>

**Help me**

幫 我 買

bong<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> maai<sub>,5</sub>

**Help me buy**

幫 我 買 一 個 蘋 果

bong<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> maai<sub>,5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> ping<sub>~4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

**Help me buy an apple**

唔該，你可唔可以幫我  
買一個蘋果？

m<sub>~4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, nei<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> bong<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>  
go<sup>-3</sup> ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>?

***Excuse me, are you able to help me buy an apple?***

地圖

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub>

**Map**

圖書館

tou<sub>-4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> gun<sup>-2</sup>

**Library**

嗰間圖書館有冇地圖?

go<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> tou<sub>-4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> gun<sup>-2</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub>?

**Does that library have a map?**

等

dang<sup>2</sup>

**To let**

等 我 去 個 度 .

dang<sup>2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

**Let me go over there.**

吓

haa<sup>2</sup>

***(To do an action for a bit)***

等我睇吓

dang<sup>2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>2</sup> haa<sup>2</sup>

***Let me take a look***

等我睇吓我地圖先。

dang<sup>2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>2</sup> haa<sup>2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sub>6</sub> tou<sub>4</sub> sin<sup>1</sup>.

***Let me take a look at my map first.***

啦

laa<sup>-1</sup>

**(Ending Particle: Used for statements)**

走

zau<sup>-2</sup>

**To leave**

我會走

ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> zau<sup>-2</sup>

**I'm leaving.**

我會走啦。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> zau<sup>-2</sup> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

**I'm leaving. (softer)**

聽

ting-3

**To hear**

我 聽 到 你 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ting-3 dou<sup>2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub>.

**I was able to hear you.**

我 聽 唔 到 你 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ting-3 m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub>.

**I wasn't able to hear you.**

愛

oi-3

**To love**

我 愛 你 .

ngo,5 oi-3 nei,5.

**I love you.**

講 俾 X 知

gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> X zi<sup>-1</sup>

**To tell X that**

我 想 講 俾 你 知

ngo<sub>,5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>

**I want to tell you that**

我 想 講 俾 你 知 我 愛 你 .

ngo<sub>,5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> oi<sup>-3</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub>.

**I want to tell you that I love you.**

話 俾 X 聽

waa<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> X ting<sup>-3</sup>

***To tell X that***

我 想 話 俾 你 聽

ngo<sup>,5</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> nei<sup>,5</sup> ting<sup>-3</sup>

***I want to tell you that***

我 想 話 俾 你 聽 我 愛 你 .

ngo<sup>,5</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> nei<sup>,5</sup> ting<sup>-3</sup> ngo<sup>,5</sup> oi<sup>-3</sup> nei<sup>,5</sup>.

***I want to tell you that I love you.***

落

lok<sub>-6</sub>

***To fall. To drop. To get off a vehicle.***

雨

jyu<sub>,5</sub>

***Rain***

落 雨

lok<sub>-6</sub> jyu<sub>,5</sub>

***To rain***

而 家 落 緊 雨 .

ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> lok<sub>-6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> jyu<sub>,5</sub>.

***It's raining now.***

而 家 落 緊 雪 .

ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> lok<sub>-6</sub> gan<sup>-2</sup> syut<sub>-3</sub>.

***It's snowing now.***

上車

soeng<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>

***To get on a vehicle (Car, Bus, Train).***

喺呢個巴士站上車

hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub> soeng<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>

***Get on at this bus stop.***

我要喺呢個巴士站上  
車。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub> soeng<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

***I need to get on (the bus) at this bus stop.***

落 車

lok<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>

***To get off a vehicle (Car, Bus, Train).***

喺 呢 個 巴 士 站 落 車

hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub> lok<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>

***Get off at this bus stop.***

我 要 喺 呢 個 巴 士 站 落  
車。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> zaam<sub>-6</sub> lok<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

***I need to get off (the bus) at this bus stop.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**To Do An Action For A Bit: 吓**

吓 (haa<sup>-2</sup>) can be placed after a verb to indicate that the action will be done for a bit.

我會睇吓呢本書。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> haa<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***I will read this book a bit.***

你會聽吓佢哋。

nei<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> ting<sup>-3</sup> haa<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>,5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>.

***You will listen to them a bit.***

佢會食吓呢個士多啤梨。

keoi<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> sik<sup>-6</sup> haa<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> be<sup>-1</sup> lei<sup>-2</sup>.

***They will eat this strawberry a bit.***

### Ending Particles: 啦

The ending particle 啦 (laa<sup>-1</sup>) can be used at the end of statements. In many cases this is just used as a filler to make the sentence sound better, or to soften the tone of the sentence so the sentence doesn't sound as harsh or as abrupt. This ending particle can make the sentence and the language sound more fun and you will be hearing it a lot in conversations.

我 想 去 個 度 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***I want to go there.***

我 想 去 個 度 啦 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

***I want to go there.***

我 想 食 嘢 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>-6</sub> je<sub>5</sub>.

***I want to eat stuff.***

我 想 食 嘢 啦 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>-6</sub> je<sub>5</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

***I want to eat stuff.***

**To Give Someone Something:** 俾 X Y

If you want to give someone something, you can use this construction. The object (**X**) is placed between the person you want to give it to (**Y**).

我想俾蘋果你。

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub>.

***I want to give you the apple.***

你想俾書我。

nei<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub>.

***You want to give me the book.***

佢想俾佢嘅電話號碼你。

keoi<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> din<sub>6</sub> waa<sup>-2</sup> hou<sub>6</sub> maa<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>.

***They want to give you their phone number.***

**Letting Someone Know You Need To Do Something: 等**

If you need to lightly tell someone that you need to do something first, you can use 等 (dang<sup>-2</sup>). In this way it's used more like a **wait for me to do this first, allow me to**, or **let me** sort of way. You aren't actually asking them for permission to do the action. There is another word that you'll learn in the future where it's related to actual permission.

等我去嗰度先。

dang<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>.

**Let me go there first.**

等我返屋企先，之後會食飯。

dang<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>, zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub>.

**Let me get back home first, then I'll eat dinner.**

**To Tell Someone Something:** 講俾 X 知 + 話俾 X 聽

You can use either of these patterns interchangeably when wanting to tell someone something.

佢講俾我知佢嘅號碼。

keoi<sub>5</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> hou<sub>6</sub> maa<sub>5</sub>.

***He told me his number.***

佢話俾我聽佢嘅號碼。

keoi<sub>5</sub> waa<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> ting<sup>-3</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> hou<sub>6</sub> maa<sub>5</sub>.

***She told me her number.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

唔該，我而家想去舖頭  
買芒果但係唔知點去個  
度。你可唔可以幫我呀？

乙

---

可以。如果你想去舖頭  
買嘢，你要搭巴士先，之  
後喺蘋果街落車。

甲

---

唔該。

乙

---

唔使。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

唔該，我而家想去舖頭  
買芒果但係唔知點去個  
度。你可唔可以幫我呀？

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>5</sub>  
mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.  
nei<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> bong<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Excuse me, I want to go to the store to buy a mango but I  
don't know how to go there. Can you help me?***

乙

可以。如果你想去舖頭  
買嘢，你要搭巴士先，之  
後喺蘋果街落車。

ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub>. jyu<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> pou<sub>-3</sub> tau<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>5</sub>  
je<sub>5</sub>, nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> daap<sub>-3</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup>, zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup>  
ping<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-1</sup> lok<sub>-6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

***I can. If you want to go to there store to buy stuff, you have to take the bus first, and then get off at Apple St.***

甲

唔該。

m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>.

***Thank you.***

乙

唔使。

m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>.

***You're welcome.***



# 第四幕

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> mok<sub>-6</sub>

**Act 4**

# 水晶頂

seoi<sup>-2</sup> zing<sup>-1</sup> deng<sup>-2</sup>

**Crystal Peak**

# 第一任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 1**

早晨·好耐冇見·

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>-4</sub>· hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-5</sub> gin<sub>-3</sub>·

***Good Morning. Long Time No See.***

早

zou<sup>2</sup>

**Early**

早晨

zou<sup>2</sup> san<sub>4</sub>

**Good Morning (Early Morning)**

再

zoi-3

**Again**

見

gin-3

**To see**

再 見

zoi-3 gin-3

**Goodbye (See you again)**

耐

noi<sub>-6</sub>

***A long time***

好耐

hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub>

***Very long time***

好耐冇見。

hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> gin<sub>-3</sub>.

***Long time no see.***

你

nei<sub>5</sub>

**You**

好

hou<sup>-2</sup>

**Good**

你好

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>

**Hello (You Good)**

點 呀？

dim<sup>2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***How are you? (Slang but a common and fundamental Cantonese greeting)***

早晨·你 點 呀？

zou<sup>2</sup> san<sub>4</sub>· nei<sub>5</sub> dim<sup>2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Good Morning. How are you?***

不如

bat<sup>-1</sup> jyu<sub>4</sub>

***Why don't ... (used for suggestions)***

不如去食嘢先？

bat<sup>-1</sup> jyu<sub>4</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>?

***Why don't we go eat something first?***

我肚餓。不如去食嘢先？

ngo<sub>5</sub> tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub> bat<sup>-1</sup> jyu<sub>4</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>?

***I'm hungry. Why don't we go eat first?***

啊

aa-3

**(Ending Particle: Used to show agreement)**

我肚餓。不如去食嘢先？

ngo<sub>5</sub> tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub>. bat<sup>-1</sup> jyu<sub>4</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>?

好啊。

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa-3.

**Alright.**

喎

wo-3

**(Ending Particle: Indicates some sort of realization or to indicate something is important)**

我真係唔鍾意食魚。

ngo˩5 zan˩1 hai˩6 m˩4 zung˩1 ji˩3 sik˩6 jyu˩4.

***I really don't like to eat fish.***

係喎。我而家知。

hai˩6 wo˩3. ngo˩5 ji˩4 gaa˩1 zi˩1.

***Yea. Now I know.***

鋪 頭

pou-3 tau-2

**Shop (place)**

一 間 鋪 頭

jat-1 gaan-1 pou-3 tau-2

**A shop**

超級市場

ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>5</sub> coeng<sub>4</sub>

**Supermarket**

一間超級市場

jat<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>5</sub> coeng<sub>4</sub>

**A supermarket**

嗰間舖頭喺嗰間超級市場  
場嘅隔離。

go<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>5</sub>  
coeng<sub>4</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> gaak<sup>-3</sup> lei<sub>4</sub>.

**That shop is next to that supermarket.**

仔

zai<sup>-2</sup>

**Son**

女

neoi<sub>,5</sub>

**Daughter**

仔 女

zai<sup>-2</sup> neoi<sub>,5</sub>

**Children**

你 有 冇 仔 女 呀？

nei<sub>,5</sub> jau<sub>,5</sub> mou<sub>,5</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup> neoi<sub>,5</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

**Do you have children?**

有·我有一個仔一個女·

jau<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>.

***Yes. I have a son and a daughter.***

開

hoi<sup>-1</sup>

**Open**

心

sam<sup>-1</sup>

**Heart**

開心

hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>

**Happy (Open Heart)**

問

man<sub>-6</sub>

**To ask**

問題

man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>

**Question. Problem.**

一個問題

jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>

**A question**

我有一個問題。

ngo<sub>-5</sub> jau<sub>-5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>.

**I have a question.**

我 有 一 個 問 題 . 你 鍾 唔  
鍾 意 食 魚 ?

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> man<sub>6</sub> tai<sub>4</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup>  
ji<sup>-3</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub>?

***I have a question. Do you like to eat fish?***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

### Ending Particles: 啊 + 喎

The 啊 (aa-3) ending particle can be used when you want to show agreement or consensus with what the other person said, and you can use the 喎 (wo-3) when you want to show that there is something that you realized, or maybe something that may be important. Something to keep in mind is that sometimes many different particles may either sound the same, or can be used interchangeably with some other particles, almost making them generic and used more as a filler to make the sentence sound softer and nicer.

等陣，你係美國人咩?!

dang<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>-6</sub>, nei<sub>-5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> mei<sub>-5</sub> gwok<sup>-3</sup> jan<sub>-4</sub> me<sup>-1</sup>?!

**Wait a second, you're American?!**

係喎.

hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sup>-3</sup>.

**Yea.**

好啊.

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-3</sup>.

**Alright.**

**A Question Or Problem With: 問題**

The word 問題 (man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>) can mean either a **question** or it can mean a **problem**. The meaning depends on the context.

我想問你一個問題。

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> man<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>.

***I want to ask you a question.***

我有一個問題。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>.

***I have a question/problem.***

你有冇問題？

nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>?

***Do you have a question/problem?***

有問題。

jau<sub>5</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>.

***I have a question/problem.***

冇問題

mou<sub>5</sub> man<sub>6</sub> tai<sub>4</sub>

***I don't have a question/problem.***

### **"Long Time No See" And Its Influence On English: 好耐冇見**

In English, it's common to sometimes hear people say **Long Time No See**. There's evidence<sup>5</sup> to indicate that this may have come from Chinese, most likely through Chinese immigration into the United States and other Western countries over the past few centuries. If you think about it, saying **Long Time No See** feels like a phrase that has some words missing. However, if you look at the cadence of how you say it in English, you'll see that it is a 4 word phrase. If you look at the corresponding example on the Chinese side, 好耐冇見 (hou<sup>2</sup> noi<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> gin<sup>-3</sup>), we can see that it's a direct translation. The ultimate origin of how this phrase came into the English language hasn't yet been discovered.

---

<sup>5</sup><https://www.npr.org/sections/codeswitch/2014/03/09/288300303/who-first-said-long-time-no-see-and-in-which-language>

### **Greeting Someone With:** 點呀

In Cantonese, a common way of greeting someone and asking how they are is by using 點呀 ( $\text{dim}^{-2}$   $\text{aa}_{-4}$ ) or combining it with 你好 ( $\text{nei}_{,5}$   $\text{hou}^{-2}$ ) as a follow up. However, it's uncommon to say 你好嗎 ( $\text{nei}_{,5}$   $\text{hou}^{-2}$   $\text{maa}^{-1}$ ) and is not colloquial. Cantonese actually doesn't use the 嗎 ( $\text{maa}^{-1}$ ) ending particle at all in spoken speech as is used in Standard Chinese when asking questions. Instead, it uses the **X not X** pattern that we have seen before, pretty much exclusively in the language, like 係唔係 ( $\text{hai}_{-6}$   $\text{m}_{-4}$   $\text{hai}_{-6}$ ) or 識唔識 ( $\text{sik}^{-1}$   $\text{m}_{-4}$   $\text{sik}^{-1}$ ).

你好! 點呀?

$\text{nei}_{,5}$   $\text{hou}^{-2}$ !  $\text{dim}^{-2}$   $\text{aa}_{-4}$ ?

**Hello! How are you?**

點呀?

$\text{dim}^{-2}$   $\text{aa}_{-4}$ ?

**What's up?**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

你好！好耐冇見！你點呀？

乙

---

早晨！好耐冇見。我好好。

你呢？

甲

---

我都好。你屋企人都好？

乙

佢哋都好. 你嘅呢?

甲

佢哋都好. 你而家有冇  
子女呀?

乙

冇. 我仲冇子女. 你呢?

甲

---

我而家有兩個仔三個  
女。

乙

---

你真係有好多仔女。你  
要買好多嘢食。

甲

---

哈哈係啲. 我而家有好多錢所以冇問題.

乙

---

我好開心見到你但係而家要走啦. 再見.

甲

---

我都好開心見到你。再  
見！

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你好！好耐冇見！你點呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>! hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> gin<sup>-3</sup>! nei<sub>5</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Hello! Long time no see! How you been?***

乙

早晨！好耐冇見。我好好。  
你呢？

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>4</sub>! hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> gin<sup>-3</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>.  
nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***Good morning! Long time no see. I'm very good. What about  
you?***

甲

我都好。你屋企人都好？

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>?

***I'm also good. Is your family also doing well?***

乙

佢哋都好。你嘅呢？

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***They are also doing well. What about yours?***

甲

佢哋都好。你而家有冇  
子女呀？

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>.nei<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup>  
neoi<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***They are all also good. Do you have kids now?***

乙

冇。我仲冇子女。你呢？

mou<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup> neoi<sub>5</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***I don't. I still don't have children. What about you?***

甲

我 而 家 有 兩 個 仔 三 個  
女 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> zai<sup>-2</sup> saam<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> nei<sub>5</sub>.

***I have 2 sons and 3 daughters now.***

乙

你 真 係 有 好 多 仔 女 . 你  
要 買 好 多 嘢 食 .

nei<sub>5</sub> zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> zai<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup>  
maai<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>.

***You really have a lot of kids. You need to buy a lot of food  
to eat.***

甲

哈哈係啲。我而家有好多錢所以冇問題。

haa<sup>-1</sup> haa<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sup>-3</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup>  
cin<sub>-4</sub> so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>.

***Haha Yea, that's true. I have a lot of money now so that's not a problem.***

乙

我好開心見到你但係而家要走啦。再見。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-4</sub>  
gaa<sup>-1</sup> jiu<sup>-3</sup> zau<sup>-2</sup> laa<sup>-1</sup>. zoi<sup>-3</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup>.

***I'm very happy to see you but I have to go now. Take care.***

甲

我 都 好 開 心 見 到 你 . 再  
見 !

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> zoi<sup>-3</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup>!

*I'm also happy to see you. Take care!*



# 第二任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 2

嗰隻熊貓大過呢隻熊貓

go<sup>-2</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> hung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> daai<sub>-6</sub> gwo<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub> hung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>

***That Panda Is Bigger Than This Panda***

熊 貓

hung~4 maau~1

**Panda**

一 隻 熊 貓

jat~1 zek~3 hung~4 maau~1

**A panda**

呢 隻 熊 貓 好

ni~1 zek~3 hung~4 maau~1 hou~2

**This panda is very**

呢 隻 熊 貓 好 大 .

ni~1 zek~3 hung~4 maau~1 hou~2 daai~6.

**This panda is very big.**

呢隻熊貓好細。

ni<sup>-1</sup> zek<sup>-3</sup> hung<sup>-4</sup> maau<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> sai<sup>-3</sup>.

***This panda is very small.***

最

zeoi-3

***The most***

我最鍾意

ngo,5 zeoi-3 zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3

***What I like the most is***

我最鍾意嘅書

ngo,5 zeoi-3 zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 ge-3 syu<sup>-1</sup>

***The book I like the most is***

我最鍾意嘅書係熊貓  
嘅。

ngo,5 zeoi-3 zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 ge-3 syu<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> hung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup> ge-3.

***The books I like the most are the panda books.***

X Y 過 Z

X Y gwo-3 Z

***X is Y more than Z***

嗰 隻 熊 貓

go-2 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1

***That panda***

嗰 隻 熊 貓 大 過

go-2 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1 daai-6 gwo-3

***That panda is bigger than***

嗰 隻 熊 貓 大 過 呢 隻 熊  
貓。

go-2 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1 daai-6 gwo-3 ni-1 zek-3 hung-4 maau-1.

***That panda is bigger than this panda.***

筆

bat<sup>-1</sup>

**Pen**

一枝筆

jat<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> bat<sup>-1</sup>

**A pen**

呢枝筆好大。

ni<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> bat<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> daai<sub>-6</sub>.

***This pen is very big.***

呢枝筆好細。

ni<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> bat<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> sai<sub>-3</sub>.

***This pen is very small.***

龍

lung<sub>4</sub>

**Dragon**

一條龍

jat<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> lung<sub>4</sub>

**A dragon**

呢條龍好

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>

**This dragon is very**

呢條龍好長。

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> coeng<sub>4</sub>.

**This dragon is very long.**

呢 條 龍 好 短。

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>~4</sub> lung<sub>~4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> dyun<sup>-2</sup>.

***This dragon is very short (length).***

呢 條 龍 好 高。

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>~4</sub> lung<sub>~4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> gou<sup>-1</sup>.

***This dragon is very tall.***

呢 條 龍 好 矮。

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>~4</sub> lung<sub>~4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> ai<sup>-2</sup>.

***This dragon is very short (height).***

記得

gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>

***To remember***

唔記得

m-4 gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>

***To forget (not remember)***

我記得

ngo,5 gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>

***I remember***

我記得你講俾我知

ngo,5 gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup> nei,5 gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> ngo,5 zi<sup>-1</sup>

***I remember you told me***

我記得你講俾我知你愛  
我。

ngo<sub>5</sub> gei<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> oi<sub>-3</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub>.

***I remember you told me that you love me.***

唔 好

m<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>

**Do not**

唔 好 去

m<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup>

**Do not go**

唔 好 唔 記 得 去 舖 頭

m<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> gei<sup>-3</sup> dak<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

**Do not forget to go to the store**

唔 好 唔 記 得 去 舖 頭 買 嘢

食 .

m<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> gei<sup>-3</sup> dak<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>.

**Do not forget to go to the store to buy something to eat.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**To Remember / To Forget: 記得 + 唔記得**

If you want to say **To remember**, you'll say 記得 (gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>), if you want to say **To forget**, you can simply negate to **To remember**. Thus, 唔記得 (m-4 gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>) is **To forget**. So you can combine that with **Don't**, to remind someone to make sure to remember (thus not forget) something.

我記得。

ngo<sup>5</sup> gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>.

***I remember.***

我唔記得。

ngo<sup>5</sup> m-4 gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>.

***I don't remember.***

唔好唔記得。

m-4 hou<sup>-2</sup> m-4 gei-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>.

***Don't forget. (Make sure to remember)***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

你覺唔覺得佢嘅電腦細  
過你嘅？

乙

---

我唔覺得佢係佢喺枱上  
嘅書大過我嘅。

甲

---

真係？我見唔到嗰本書。

乙

---

冇問題。好多人見唔到  
嗰本書。

甲

---

我之前見到嗰本書但係  
唔記得喺嗰度。

乙

---

係啲。我仲未問你如果  
你去過嗰間好大嘅超級  
市場？

甲

---

喺熊貓街嘅超級市場  
呀？

乙

係啊. 嗰間嘅.

甲

仲未去嗰度但係我會去  
啦.

乙

好啊. 再見.

甲

---

再見。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你覺唔覺得佢嘅電腦細  
過你嘅？

nei<sub>5</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> din<sub>-6</sub> nou<sub>5</sub> sai<sub>-3</sub>  
gwo<sub>-3</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub>?

***Do you think that his computer is smaller than yours?***

乙

我唔覺得佢係佢喺枱上  
嘅書大過我嘅。

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> toi<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sub>-6</sub>  
ge<sub>-3</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> daai<sub>-6</sub> gwo<sub>-3</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub>.

***I don't think so but the book that he has on top of the table  
is bigger than mine.***

甲

真係？我見唔到嗰本書。

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>? ngo<sub>5</sub> gin<sup>-3</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**Really? I didn't see that book.**

乙

冇問題。好多人見唔到  
嗰本書。

mou<sub>5</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>. hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>-4</sub> gin<sup>-3</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup>  
bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

**No problem. A lot of people didn't see that book.**

甲

我 之 前 見 到 個 本 書 但 係  
唔 記 得 喺 個 度 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> gin<sub>3</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>  
m<sub>4</sub> gei<sub>3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.

***I saw that book before but I forgot that it was there.***

乙

係 啲。我 仲 未 問 你 如 果  
你 去 過 個 間 好 大 嘅 超 級  
市 場 ？

hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>-3</sub> ngo<sub>-5</sub> zung<sub>-6</sub> mei<sub>-6</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>-5</sub> jyu<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sub>-2</sub>  
nei<sub>-5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gwo<sub>-3</sub> go<sub>-2</sub> gaan<sub>-1</sub> hou<sub>-2</sub> daai<sub>-6</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> ciu<sub>-1</sub> kap<sub>-1</sub>  
si<sub>-5</sub> coeng<sub>-4</sub>?

**Right. I still haven't asked you if you've gone to that big supermarket?**

甲

喺 熊 貓 街 嘅 超 級 市 場  
呀 ？

hai<sub>-2</sub> hung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sub>-1</sub> gaai<sub>-1</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> ciu<sub>-1</sub> kap<sub>-1</sub> si<sub>-5</sub> coeng<sub>-4</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

**The supermarket on Panda St?**

乙

係啊. 嗰間嘅.

hai<sub>-6</sub> aa<sub>-3</sub>. go<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub>.

***Yea. That one.***

甲

仲未去嗰度但係我會去  
啦.

zung<sub>-6</sub> mei<sub>-6</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub>  
heoi<sub>-3</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

***I still haven't gone there but I will go.***

乙

好啊。再見。

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa-3. zoi-3 gin-3.

**Cool. Take care.**

甲

再見。

zoi-3 gin-3.

**Take care.**



# 第三任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 3**

今日我好開心

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>

***I'm Very Happy Today***

年

nin<sub>-4</sub>

**Year**

今年

gam<sup>-1</sup> nin<sub>-4</sub>

**This Year**

舊年

gau<sub>-6</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub>

**Last Year (Old Year)**

出年

ceot<sup>-1</sup> nin<sub>-4</sub>

**Next Year (The Year To Happen)**

呢 個

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

***This***

上 個

soeng<sup>-6</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

***Last***

下 個

haa<sup>-6</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

***Next***

呢 個 月

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

***This Month***

上 個 月

soeng<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

***Last Month***

下 個 月

haa<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

***Next Month***

號

hou<sub>-6</sub>

***Day (Spoken)***

日

jat<sub>-6</sub>

***Day (Written)***

今日

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**Today**

尋日

cam<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**Yesterday (Search Day)**

聽日

ting<sub>-3</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**Tomorrow (Listen Day)**

前 日

cin<sub>4</sub> jat<sub>6</sub>

***The Day Before Tomorrow (2 Days Ago)***

後 日

hau<sub>6</sub> jat<sub>6</sub>

***The Day After Tomorrow (2 Days Later)***

禮拜

lai<sub>5</sub> baai<sub>3</sub>

**Week**

星期

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>4</sub>

**Week**

呢 個 星 期

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub>

***This Week***

上 個 星 期

soeng<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub>

***Last Week***

下 個 星 期

haa<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub>

***Next Week***

星 期 一

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**Monday (Day 1)**

星 期 二

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub>

**Tuesday (Day 2)**

星 期 三

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup>

**Wednesday (Day 3)**

星 期 四

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub>

**Thursday (Day 4)**

星 期 五

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub>

**Friday (Day 5)**

星 期 六

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub>

**Saturday (Day 6)**

星 期 日

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**Sunday (Day (of) Sun)**

星 期 六 日

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**Weekend (Day 6 + Sun)**

一月

jat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**January (Month 1)**

二月

ji<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**February (Month 2)**

三月

saam<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**March (Month 3)**

四月

sei<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**April (Month 4)**

五 月

ng<sub>5</sub> jyut<sub>6</sub>

**May (Month 5)**

六 月

luk<sub>6</sub> jyut<sub>6</sub>

**June (Month 6)**

七 月

cat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>6</sub>

**July (Month 7)**

八 月

baat<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>6</sub>

**August (Month 8)**

九月

gau<sup>2</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**September (Month 9)**

十月

sap<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**October (Month 10)**

十一月

sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**November (Month 11)**

十二月

sap<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**December (Month 12)**

今日

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**Today (This Day)**

今日係

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub>

**Today is**

今日係二零二五年

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub>

**Today is 2025 (Year 2025)**

今日係二零二五年一  
月

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

**Today is January, 2025 (Year 2025, Month 1)**

今日係二零二五年一月  
十八號。

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub>  
baat<sub>-3</sub> hou<sub>-6</sub>.

***Today is January 18, 2025 (Year 2025, Month 1, Day 18).***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Sunday:** 七 --- 日

When saying the days of the week, you use the numbers 1-6 for Monday through Saturday. However, Sunday is special. You don't use the number 7 for it: 七 (cat<sup>-1</sup>), but rather the character for day: 日 (jat<sub>-6</sub>).



***Be Careful With The Tones For Sunday And Monday***

Be careful when trying to say Sunday and Monday. They both are flat tones but the only difference is that Sunday is a low flat tone, and Monday is a high flat tone.

**Tone 6 vs Tone 1.**

星 期 日

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

***Sunday***

星 期 一

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

***Monday***

**Saying Dates In Writing vs Speaking: 日 --- 號**

When you are talking about a date, if you are writing it down, you use the word 日 (jat<sub>-6</sub>), however when you say the date, you use the word 號 (hou<sub>-6</sub>).

今日係十月六日。

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>.

***Today is October 6th. (Written)***

今日係十月六號。

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> hou<sub>-6</sub>.

***Today is October 6th. (Spoken)***

**Different Ways Of Saying Week: 星期 --- 禮拜**

You can say week in two different ways in Cantonese, and they are both interchangeable: 星期 (sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>4</sub>) and 禮拜 (lai<sub>5</sub> baai<sup>-3</sup>). The first is more formal than the second but there is no problem in using it all the time.

呢個星期我好開心。

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm very happy this week.***

呢個禮拜我好開心。

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> lai<sub>5</sub> baai<sup>-3</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm very happy this week.***

### **Big To Small**

In Chinese, there is a general philosophy of saying things from big to small, and this includes not only dates, but geographical locations as well. So you would say the year first, then the month, and then the day. For geographical locations you could go from Planet -> Continent -> Country -> State -> City.

二零二五年四月一日

ji<sub>-6</sub> ling<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**April 1, 2025**

地球，北美，美國，紐約，布碌侖

dei<sub>-6</sub> kau<sub>-4</sub>, bak<sup>-1</sup> mei<sub>-5</sub>, mei<sub>-5</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub>, nau<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-3</sub>, bou<sub>-3</sub> luk<sup>-1</sup> leon<sub>-4</sub>

**Earth, North America, United States, New York, Brooklyn**

### Counting Days And Months

When talking about how many months or how many days, take care in specifying it correctly. For example, 三月 (saam<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>) is March, so you can't say **3 months** like that. You would need to use a classifier with the number: 三個月 (saam<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>). However, when stating dates, you don't use a classifier, and instead can be said directly. So 三日 (saam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>) is correct, not 三個日 (saam<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>).

你幾耐鍾意佢?

nei<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub>?

**How long have you liked her?**

我三個月鍾意佢。

ngo<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub>.

**I've liked her for 3 months.**

你幾時會去香港?

nei<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> si<sub>-4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup>?

**When are you going to Hong Kong?**

我會五日之後去香港。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup>.

**I'm going to Hong Kong in 5 days.**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

今日我會去博物館見  
嘢。你想唔想同埋我一  
齊去個度？

乙

真係？我好耐冇去博物  
館。我想去但係今日有  
好多嘢做。

甲

冇問題. 聽日好唔好呀?

乙

聽日好. 再見.

甲

好啊. 再見.

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

今日我會去博物館見  
嘢。你想唔想同埋我一  
齊去個度？

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> bok<sup>-3</sup> mat<sub>-6</sub> gun<sup>-2</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup> je<sub>5</sub>.  
nei<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tung<sub>-4</sub> maai<sub>-4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> cai<sub>-4</sub>  
heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

***I'm going to the museum today to see stuff. Do you want to go with me together there?***

乙

真係？我好耐冇去博物館。  
我想去但係今日有好多嘢做。

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>? ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> bok<sub>-3</sub> mat<sub>-6</sub>  
gun<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>  
hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>-6</sub>.

***Really? I haven't been to the museum in a long time. I want to go but I have a lot of stuff to do today.***

甲

冇問題。聽日好唔好呀？

mou<sub>5</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>. ting<sub>-3</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***No problem. Is tomorrow ok?***

乙

聽日好。再見。

ting-3 jat-6 hou<sup>-2</sup>. zoi-3 gin-3.

***Tomorrow is good. See you.***

甲

好啊。再見。

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa-3. zoi-3 gin-3.

***Good. See you.***



# 第四任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 4**

# 而家幾點鐘

ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

## **What Time Is It Now**

點 鐘

$\text{dim}^{-2}$   $\text{zung}^{-1}$

**O'Clock**

點

$\text{dim}^{-2}$

**O'Clock**

一 點 鐘

$\text{jat}^{-1}$   $\text{dim}^{-2}$   $\text{zung}^{-1}$

**1:00**

一 點

$\text{jat}^{-1}$   $\text{dim}^{-2}$

**1:00**

兩 點

loeng<sub>5</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup>

**2:00**

半

bun-3

**Half**

一點半

jat<sup>-1</sup>

dim<sup>-2</sup>

bun-3

**1:30**

一 分 鐘

jat<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

**1 Minute**

一 分

jat<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**1 Minute**

十 五 分 鐘

sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

**15 Minutes**

十 五 分

sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**15 Minutes**

一點零五分鐘

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> ling<sub>4</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

**1:05**

一點零五分

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> ling<sub>4</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**1:05**

一點搭一

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> daap<sub>3</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**1:05 (First dot on an analog clock)**

一點一

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**1:05**

一點十分

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**1:10**

一點搭二

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> daap<sub>-3</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub>

**1:10 (Second dot on an analog clock)**

一點二

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>-6</sub>

**1:10**

一點十五分

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**1:15**

一點搭三

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> daap<sub>-3</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup>

**1:15 (Third dot on an analog clock)**

一點三

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> saam<sup>-1</sup>

**1:15**

一點四十五分

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-3</sup> sap<sup>-6</sup> ng<sup>5</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**1:45**

一點搭九

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> daap<sup>-3</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**1:45 (Ninth dot on an analog clock)**

一點九

jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**1:45**

秒

miu<sub>5</sub>

**Second**

二十六秒

ji<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> miu<sub>5</sub>

**26 Seconds**

廿六秒

jaa<sub>-6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup> luk<sub>-6</sub> miu<sub>5</sub>

**26 Seconds**

一 分 鐘

jat<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

**1 minute**

一 分 鐘 有

jat<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub>

**1 minute has**

一 分 鐘 有 六 十 秒。

jat<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> sap<sub>6</sub> miu<sub>5</sub>.

**1 minute has 60 seconds.**

鐘 頭

zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

**Hour**

一 個 鐘 頭

jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

**1 Hour**

半 個 鐘 頭

bun<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

**Half an Hour**

兩 個 鐘 頭

loeng<sup>-5</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

**Two Hours**

一 日

jat<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>

**1 day**

一 日 有

jat<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>

**1 day has**

一 日 有 廿 四 個 鐘 頭。

jat<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jaa<sub>-6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup> sei<sub>-3</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>.

**1 day has 24 hours.**

今朝

gam<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

***This Morning***

尋朝

cam<sub>4</sub> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

***Yesterday Morning (Search Morning)***

聽朝

ting<sub>3</sub> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

***Tomorrow Morning (Listen Morning)***

今晚

gam<sup>-1</sup> maan<sub>5</sub>

***Tonight***

尋晚

cam<sub>4</sub> maan<sub>5</sub>

***Yesterday Night (Search Night)***

聽晚

ting<sub>-3</sub> maan<sub>5</sub>

***Tomorrow Night (Listen Night)***

朝 早

ziu<sup>-1</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup>

**Early Morning**

晏 晝

aan<sup>-3</sup> zau<sup>-3</sup>

**Afternoon**

夜 晚

je<sup>-6</sup> maan<sup>-5</sup>

**Night**

凌 晨

ling<sup>-4</sup> san<sup>-4</sup>

**Early Dawn**

我會

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub>

***I will***

我會今朝

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

***This morning I will***

我會今朝十點廿分鐘

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> jaa<sub>6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

***This morning at 10:20 I will***

我會今朝十點廿分鐘去  
你屋企。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> jaa<sub>6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>

heoi<sub>3</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>.

***This morning at 10:20 I will go to your house.***

而 家

ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup>

**Now**

而 家 幾 點 鐘？

ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup>?

**What time is it now?**

而 家 九 點 半。

ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-3</sup>.

**It's 9:30 now.**

幾時

gei<sup>-2</sup> si<sup>-4</sup>

**When**

幾時想去舖頭

gei<sup>-2</sup> si<sup>-4</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

**When want to go to the store**

你幾時想去舖頭買蘋果？

nei<sup>-5</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> si<sup>-4</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> maai<sup>-5</sup> ping<sup>-4</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>?

**When do you want to go to the store to buy apple(s)?**

我會聽晚八點九去嗰度  
買蘋果。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> ting<sub>-3</sub> maan<sub>5</sub> baat<sub>-3</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup>  
dou<sub>-6</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> ping<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>.

***Tomorrow night at 8:45 I'll go to the store to buy apple(s).***

時間

si<sub>4</sub> gaan<sup>-1</sup>

**Time**

要幾多時間

jiu<sup>-3</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>4</sub> gaan<sup>-1</sup>

**How much time**

你要幾多時間去嗰度？

nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>4</sub> gaan<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

**How much time do you need to go there?**

幾耐

gei<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub>

**How long**

要幾耐去

jiu<sub>-3</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub>

**Need how long to go**

你要幾耐去個度？

nei<sub>-5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

**How long do you need to go there?**

我要十五分鐘去個度。

ngo<sub>-5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

**I need 15 minutes to go there.**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

### ***Telling Time Based On The Dots Of An Analog Clock***

When you tell time, you can either say it directly, or you can tell it by the number of dots on an analog clock. However, I haven't seen people go above 9 when using the analog equivalents.

六 點 零 五 分

luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> ling<sub>-4</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**6:05**

六 點 搭 一

luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> daap<sub>-3</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**6:05**

六 點 一

luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup>

**6:05**

六 點 三 十 五 分

luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup>

**6:35**

六 點 搭 七

luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> daap<sub>-3</sub> cat<sup>-1</sup>

**6:35**

六 點 七

luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> cat<sup>-1</sup>

**6:35**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

早晨. 你幾點鐘想去我  
朋友屋企食嘢?

乙

早晨. 我今朝十點半有  
嘢做但係一點九可以.

甲

我一點九唔可以去個  
度。四點五十六分呢？

乙

四點五十六分好。再見。

甲

好。再見。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

早晨．你幾點鐘想去我  
朋友屋企食嘢？

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>-4</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub>  
pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>-6</sub> je<sub>5</sub>?

**Good morning. What time do you want to go to my friend's  
house to eat?**

乙

早晨．我今朝十點半有  
嘢做但係一點九可以。

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>-4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-3</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub>  
zou<sub>-6</sub> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub>.

**Good morning. I have some stuff to do this morning at 10:30,  
but I can go at 1:45.**

甲

我一點九唔可以去個  
度。四點五十六分呢？

ngo<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>.  
sei<sup>-3</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> ng<sub>5</sub> sap<sub>6</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***I can't go at 1:45. What about 4:56?***

乙

四點五十六分好。再見。

sei<sup>-3</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> ng<sub>5</sub> sap<sub>6</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. zoi<sup>-3</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup>.

***4:56 is good. See you then.***

甲

好·再見·

hou<sup>2</sup>. zoi-3 gin-3.

***Good. I'll see you then.***



# 第五任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 5

# 你幾點返工

nei<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>

## ***What Time You Start Work***

公司

gung<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-1</sup>

**Company**

寫字樓

se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>-6</sub> lau<sub>-4</sub>

**Office**

呢間公司

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-1</sup>

**This company**

呢間公司嘅寫字樓

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>-6</sub> lau<sub>-4</sub>

**This company's office**

呢間公司嘅寫字樓好靚。

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>-6</sub> lau<sub>-4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sup>-3</sup>.

***This company's office is very beautiful.***

大道

daai<sub>-6</sub> dou<sub>-6</sub>

**Avenue**

八大道

baat<sub>-3</sub> daai<sub>-6</sub> dou<sub>-6</sub>

**8th Avenue**

做嘢

zou<sub>-6</sub> je<sub>-5</sub>

**To work (to do stuff)**

你喺邊度做嘢?

nei<sub>-5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> zou<sub>-6</sub> je<sub>-5</sub>?

**Where do you work?**

我 喺 八 大 道 做 嘢 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>2</sup> baat<sub>3</sub> daai<sub>6</sub> dou<sub>6</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> je<sub>5</sub>.

***I work on 8th avenue.***

返 工

faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>

**To start work**

你 幾 點 鐘 返 工 ？

nei<sup>5</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>?

**What time do you start work?**

我 朝 早 九 點 返 工 。

ngo<sup>5</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>.

**I start work at 9 o'clock in the morning.**

放 工

fong<sup>-3</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>

**To get off work**

你 幾 點 鐘 放 工 ？

nei<sup>,5</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> fong<sup>-3</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>?

**What time do you get off work?**

我 五 點 放 工 。

ngo<sup>,5</sup> ng<sup>,5</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> fong<sup>-3</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>.

**I get off at 5 o'clock.**

多 米 尼 加

do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup>

***Dominican (Dominican Republic, Country)***

共 和 國

gung<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>4</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub>

***Republic***

多 米 尼 加 共 和 國

do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> gung<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>4</sub> gwok<sub>-3</sub>

***Dominican Republic***

我 爸 爸 媽 媽 係 多 米 尼 加  
人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub>  
gaa<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***My parents are Dominican.***

其實

kei<sub>-4</sub> sat<sub>-6</sub>

**Actually**

以為

ji<sub>-5</sub> wai<sub>-6</sub>

***I thought/assumed that (incorrectly).***

呵

ho<sup>-2</sup>

***(Ending Particle: Used to confirm an assumption)***

哦

o<sub>-4</sub>

***(Sound: Oh)***

你係香港人呵？

nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup>?

***You are a Hong Konger right?***

唔係。我其實係多米尼  
加人。

m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> kei<sub>4</sub> sat<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***No. I'm actually Dominican.***

哦。我以為你係香港人。

o<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>5</sub> wai<sub>6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***Oh. I thought you were a Hong Konger.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

你好. 你點呀?

乙

好好. 你呢?

甲

我都好. 你今日會唔會

返工呀?

乙

會。我要九點半返工。

甲

九點半好早但係我都要  
好早返工。八點九啲。

乙

真係好早。你嘅寫字樓  
喺邊度呀？

甲

---

我嘅寫字樓喺五大道  
四十九街。嗰個地區有  
好多多米尼加人同中國  
人。

乙

---

真係？我好朋友係多米  
尼加人。

甲

---

哦·好開心·

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

---

你好。你點呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Hello. How are you?***

乙

---

好好。你呢？

hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>?

***I'm very good. What about you?***

甲

我都好。你今日會唔會  
返工呀？

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>6</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup>  
gung<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***I'm also good. Are you going to work today?***

乙

會。我要九點半返工。

wui<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-3</sup> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>.

***Yes. I need to start work at 9:30.***

甲

九點半好早但係我都要  
好早返工。八點九啲。

gau<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> bun<sup>-3</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>-5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> jiu<sup>-3</sup>  
hou<sup>-2</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup>. baat<sup>-3</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup> wo<sup>-3</sup>.

**9:30 is very early but I also need to start work very early. At  
8:45.**

乙

真係好早。你嘅寫字樓  
喺邊度呀？

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>-5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup> se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>-6</sub> lau<sub>-4</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup>  
bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

**That really is very early. Where is your office at?**

甲

我嘅寫字樓喺五大道四十九街。嗰個地區有好多多米尼加人同中國人。

ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>6</sub> lau<sub>4</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ng<sub>5</sub> daai<sub>6</sub> dou<sub>6</sub> sei<sub>3</sub>  
sap<sub>6</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup> gaai<sup>-1</sup>. go<sup>-2</sup> go<sub>3</sub> dei<sub>6</sub> keoi<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup>  
do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub> tung<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> gwok<sub>3</sub> jan<sub>4</sub>.

***My office is on 49th st and 5th avenue. That area has a lot of Dominican and Chinese people.***

乙

真係？我好朋友係多米  
尼加人。

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>? ngo<sub>,5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>,5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>,5</sub> nei<sub>-4</sub>  
gaa<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>-4</sub>.

***Really? My good friend is Dominican.***

甲

哦。好開心。

o<sub>-4</sub>. hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>.

***Oh. I'm happy.***



# 第六任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 6

我聽講你鍾意嗰個女人

ngo<sub>,5</sub> ting<sub>-3</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> neoi<sub>,5</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub>

***I Heard That You Like That Girl***

已 經

ji<sub>5</sub> ging<sup>-1</sup>

**Already**

我 已 經 食 咗 飯 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>5</sub> ging<sup>-1</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup> faan<sub>6</sub>.

***I already ate dinner.***

賣

maai<sub>-6</sub>

**To sell**

一定

jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub>

**Definitely**

梗係

gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>

**Definitely. Certainly. Of course.**

你想唔想賣呢本書？

nei<sub>-5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>-6</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>?

**Do you want to sell this book?**

梗係啦。我已經睇咗呢  
本書。你想唔想買佢？

gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> ji<sub>,5</sub> ging<sup>-1</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> zo<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup>  
syu<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>,5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>,5</sub> keoi<sub>,5</sub>?

***Of course. I already read this book. Do you want to buy it?***

梗係唔想。我已經有呢  
本書。

gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> ji<sub>,5</sub> ging<sup>-1</sup> jau<sub>,5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> bun<sup>-2</sup> syu<sup>-1</sup>.

***Of course not. I already have this book.***

司機

si<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

**Driver**

揸

zaa<sup>-1</sup>

**To drive**

揸車

zaa<sup>-1</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>

**To drive a vehicle (Car, Bus, Train)**

邊個揸緊車？

bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> zaa<sup>-1</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>?

**Who is driving the car?**

司機揸緊車。  
si<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> zaa<sup>-1</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

***The driver is driving the car.***

打算

daa<sup>-2</sup> syun<sup>-3</sup>

***To plan***

旅遊

leoi<sup>5</sup> jau<sup>-4</sup>

***To travel (for leisure)***

出差

ceot<sup>-1</sup> caai<sup>-1</sup>

***To travel (for business)***

加州

gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup>

***California***

你打算去加州旅遊呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> daa<sup>-2</sup> syun<sub>3</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup> leoi<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>4</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***Are you planning on traveling to California for fun?***

唔係。我打算去加州出差。

m<sub>4</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> daa<sup>-2</sup> syun<sub>3</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup> ceot<sup>-1</sup> caai<sup>-1</sup>.

***No. I'm planning on traveling to California for business.***

聽 講

ting-3 gong<sup>2</sup>

**To have heard**

秘 密

bei-3 mat<sub>-6</sub>

**Secret**

我 聽 講 你 鍾 意 個 女  
人 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> ting-3 gong<sup>2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji-3 go<sup>-2</sup> go-3 neoi<sub>5</sub> jan<sub>-4</sub>.

**I heard that you like that girl.**

係 啲 . 我 鍾 意 佢 但 係 唔  
好 講 俾 佢 知 . 呢 個 會 係  
我 哋 嘅 秘 密 .

hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>-3</sub>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> keoi<sub>,5</sub> daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>  
gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>,5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>. ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>,5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>  
ge<sub>-3</sub> bei<sub>-3</sub> mat<sub>-6</sub>.

***Yea. I like her but don't tell her. This will be out secret.***

梗 係 啦 . 我 一 定 唔 會 講  
俾 佢 知 .

gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup>  
keoi<sub>,5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>.

***Of course. I definitely won't tell her.***

貴

gwai-3

**Expensive**

平

ping-4

**Cheap**

呢 條 香 蕉 幾 多 錢 ？

ni-1 tiu-4 hoeng-1 ziu-1 gei-2 do-1 cin-4?

**How much does this banana cost?**

呢 條 香 蕉 一 百 蚊 。

ni-1 tiu-4 hoeng-1 ziu-1 jat-1 baak-3 man-1.

**This banana costs \$100 dollars.**

真係咩?! 好貴㗎.

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> me<sup>-1?!</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> gwai<sub>-3</sub> wo<sub>-3</sub>.

***Really?! That's very expensive.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Careful With The Tones For Buying/Selling: 買 + 賣**

The only difference between the sound for buying and selling is the tone. Buying is a low rising tone, and selling is a low flat tone. 買 (maai<sub>5</sub>) and 賣 (maai<sub>6</sub>).

你做咩呀?

nei<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub> me<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**What do you do?**

我買賣嘢。

ngo<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>6</sub> je<sub>5</sub>.

**I buy and sell stuff.**

### **The Different Definitely's: 一定 + 梗係**

There are two different “definitely”s that I’ve introduced: 一定 (jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub>) and 梗係 (gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>). They basically both express the same meaning. 一定 (jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub>) is more formal, and 梗係 (gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>) is more casual. But feel free to use both of them interchangeably.

佢哋一定會買嘢食。

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>.

***They will definitely buy stuff to eat.***

我會梗係返工啦。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

***Of course I'll be going to work.***

**Traveling For Fun Or For Business: 旅遊 + 出差**

In Cantonese, when you are talking about traveling, you can immediately tell if someone is traveling for fun, or for business by the words that they use. If they say 旅遊 (leoi<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>4</sub>), then it's normally for fun/leisure. If they say 出差 (ceot<sup>-1</sup> caa<sup>-1</sup>), it will definitely be for business.

我會去多米尼加旅遊。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> leoi<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>4</sub>.

***I'm going to the Dominican Republic for leisure.***

佢會去波士頓出差。

keoi<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> bo<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> deon<sup>-2</sup> ceot<sup>-1</sup> caai<sup>-1</sup>.

***She is traveling to Boston for business.***

**Sound Change:** 差

The character 差's pronunciation changes from  $caa^{-1}$  to  $caai^{-1}$  when used in 出差 ( $ceot^{-1} caai^{-1}$ ).

差 唔 多

$caa^{-1}$   $m_{\sim 4}$   $do^{-1}$

***Approximately***

出 差

$ceot^{-1}$   $caai^{-1}$

***Traveling (for business)***

**The Flexibility Of: 車**

The word for car or vehicle is 車 (ce<sup>-1</sup>) as introduced in earlier chapters. This is a flexible word and you will be hearing it not just for cars, but also for trains, and other types of vehicles.

我 架 車 好 紅 .

ngo<sup>5</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> hung<sup>-4</sup>.

***My car is very red.***

呢 架 地 鐵 喺 邊 個 ?

ni<sup>-1</sup> gaa<sup>-3</sup> dei<sup>-6</sup> tit<sup>-3</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>?

***Which train is this?***

呢 個 係 N 車 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hai<sup>-6</sup> N ce<sup>-1</sup>.

***This is the N train.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

我一日好想去多米尼加  
旅遊但係去嗰度好貴。

乙

幾多錢去嗰度？

甲

三千蚊。

乙

好貴喎！如果去嗰度好  
貴，你會去邊度呀？

甲

我覺得去加州好。天氣  
好好。

乙

係喎。我都聽講加州嘅  
天氣好好。

甲

你要搭飛機幾耐？

乙

六個鐘頭。

甲

你打算去加州？

乙

我打算四月十五號去  
個度。

甲

好呀。再見。

乙

---

再見。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我 一 日 好 想 去 多 米 尼 加  
旅 遊 但 係 去 嗰 度 好 貴。

ngo<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> do<sup>-1</sup> mai<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup>  
leoi<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>4</sub> daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> gwai<sub>3</sub>.

***One day I really want to go on a trip to the Dominican Republic but going there is expensive.***

乙

幾 多 錢 去 嗰 度 ？

gei<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>4</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

***How much does it cost to go there?***

甲

三千蚊。

saam<sup>-1</sup> cin<sup>-1</sup> man<sup>-1</sup>.

**\$3,000 dollars**

乙

好貴喎！如果去嗰度好  
貴，你會去邊度呀？

hou<sup>-2</sup> gwai<sup>-3</sup> wo<sup>-3</sup>! jy<sup>-4</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-6</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> gwai<sup>-3</sup>,  
nei<sup>-5</sup> wui<sup>-5</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sup>-6</sup> aa<sup>-4</sup>?

**Wow that's very expensive! If it's so expensive to go there,  
where will you go?**

甲

我 覺 得 去 加 州 好 . 天 氣  
好 好 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> gok<sub>3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> heoi<sub>3</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>. tin<sup>-1</sup> hei<sub>3</sub>  
hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>.

***I think going to California would be good. Very good weather.***

乙

係 啲 . 我 都 聽 講 加 州 嘅  
天 氣 好 好 .

hai<sub>6</sub> wo<sub>3</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> ting<sub>3</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>3</sub> tin<sup>-1</sup>  
hei<sub>3</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>.

***Yea. I also heard California's weather is very good.***

甲

你 要 搭 飛 機 幾 耐 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> daap<sub>3</sub> fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>6</sub>?

*How long do you need to be on the airplane?*

乙

六 個 鐘 頭 。

luk<sub>6</sub> go<sub>3</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>.

**6 hours**

甲

你打算去加州？

nei<sub>5</sub> daa<sup>-2</sup> syun<sub>-3</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup>?

***You planning to go to California?***

乙

我打算四月十五號去個  
度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> daa<sup>-2</sup> syun<sub>-3</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> hou<sub>-6</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub>  
go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***I'm planning to go there on April 15th.***

甲

---

好呀·再見·

hou<sup>2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>· zoi-3 gin-3.

**Good. Take care.**

乙

---

再見·

zoi-3 gin-3.

**Take care.**



# 第五幕

dai<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> mok<sub>-6</sub>

## **Act 5**

# 禁域

gam<sub>-3</sub> wik<sub>-6</sub>

## **Forbidden Realm**

# 第一任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 1

我會瞓覺。早啱我親愛嘅  
老婆。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> fan<sub>-3</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub>. zou<sup>-2</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> can<sup>-1</sup> oi<sub>-3</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> lou<sub>,5</sub> po<sub>-4</sub>.

***I'm Going To Sleep Now. Good Night My Dear Wife.***

𩚑

gui<sub>-6</sub>

**Tired**

好 𩚑

hou<sup>-2</sup> gui<sub>-6</sub>

**Very tired**

今日仲係好𩚑。

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> zung<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> gui<sub>-6</sub>.

**Still tired today**

我尋日有好多嘢做。今日  
日仲係好𩚑。

ngo<sub>-5</sub> cam<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub> jau<sub>-5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>-5</sub> zou<sub>-6</sub>. gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>  
zung<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> gui<sub>-6</sub>.

**I had a lot of stuff to do yesterday. (I'm) still tired today.**

起身

hei<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup>

**To get up (Body rises)**

你幾點鐘起身？

nei<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> hei<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup>?

**What time did you get up?**

我凌晨三點鐘起身。

ngo<sub>5</sub> ling<sub>4</sub> san<sub>4</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> hei<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup>.

**I got up at 3 o'clock in the morning.**

瞓 覺

fan-3 gok-3

**To sleep**

醒

seng<sup>-2</sup>

**To wake up**

你 幾 點 鐘 瞓 覺？ 幾 點 鐘  
醒？

nei<sub>5</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> fan-3 gok-3? gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> seng<sup>-2</sup>?

**What time did you go to sleep? What time did you wake up?**

我 十 點 半 瞓 覺， 六 點 醒

ngo<sub>5</sub> sap<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> bun-3 fan-3 gok-3, luk<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> seng<sup>-2</sup>

**I went to sleep at 10:30, (and) woke up at 6 o'clock.**

老公

lou˥ gung˥˥

**Husband**

老婆

lou˥ po˥˥

**Wife**

早啱

zou˥˥ tau˥˥

**Good Night (said to someone you are close to)**

親愛

can˥˥ oi˥˥

**Dear**

我會瞓覺。早啱我親愛  
嘅老婆。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> fan<sub>-3</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub>. zou<sup>-2</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> can<sup>-1</sup> oi<sub>-3</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub>  
lou<sub>5</sub> po<sub>-4</sub>.

***I'm going to sleep. Good night my dear Wife.***

早啱我親愛嘅老公。

zou<sup>-2</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> can<sup>-1</sup> oi<sub>-3</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> lou<sub>5</sub> gung<sup>-1</sup>.

***Good night my dear Husband.***

陪

pui<sub>4</sub>

**To accompany**

想 唔 想 陪 我

soeng<sup>2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> soeng<sup>2</sup> pui<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub>

**Want or not want to accompany me**

你 想 唔 想 陪 我 去 超 級 市  
場 買 嘢 食 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> soeng<sup>2</sup> pui<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>5</sub>

coeng<sub>4</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>?

**Do you want to accompany me to the supermarket to buy  
something to eat?**

跟

gan<sup>-1</sup>

***To follow. To come with.***

想 唔 想 跟 我

soeng<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub>

你 想 唔 想 跟 我 去 超 級 市  
場 買 嘢 食 ？

nei<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>5</sub>

coeng<sub>-4</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>?

***Do you want to come with me to the supermarket to buy  
something to eat?***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Sound Change:** 覺得 + 瞓覺

We've seen examples of this before with the 差 (caa<sup>-1</sup>) character. In Cantonese, a character can sometimes have a different sound based on the word it's being used in.

覺得

gok-3 dak<sup>-1</sup>

***To think. To feel.***

瞓覺

fan-3 gok-3

***To sleep***

我 覺得 我會 瞓覺。

ngo,5 gok-3 dak<sup>-1</sup> ngo,5 wui,5 fan-3 gok-3.

***I think I'm going to go to sleep.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

我已經好叻所以覺得會  
瞓覺先。你呢？你打算幾  
點鐘瞓覺？

乙

---

我會睇電視先。覺得兩  
個鐘頭之後會瞓覺。

甲

聽日你會返工呵？

乙

會。我要七點三起身。

甲

好啊。早啲我親愛嘅老婆。

乙

---

早啱我親愛嘅老公。我  
愛你。

甲

---

我都愛你。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我已經好𦉳所以覺得會  
瞓覺先。你呢？你打算幾  
點鐘瞓覺？

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>5</sub> ging<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> gui<sub>6</sub> so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub>  
fan<sub>-3</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ne<sup>-1</sup>? nei<sub>5</sub> daa<sup>-2</sup> syun<sub>-3</sub> gei<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup>  
zung<sup>-1</sup> fan<sub>-3</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub>?

***I'm already very tired so I'm going to go to sleep first. What about you? What time are you planning to go to sleep?***

乙

我會睇電視先。覺得兩個鐘頭之後會瞓覺。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> din<sub>6</sub> si<sub>6</sub> sin<sup>-1</sup>. gok<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub>  
zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>6</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> fan<sub>-3</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub>.

***I'm going to watch TV first. I think I'll go to sleep in two hours.***

甲

聽日你會返工呵？

ting<sub>-3</sub> jat<sub>6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> gung<sup>-1</sup> ho<sup>-2</sup>?

***You going to work tomorrow, right?***

乙

會·我 要 七 點 三 起 身·

wui<sub>5</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> cat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> saam<sup>-1</sup> hei<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup>.

***Yea. I need to get up at 7:15.***

甲

好 啊·早 啱 我 親 愛 嘅 老  
婆·

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>3</sub>. zou<sup>-2</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> can<sup>-1</sup> oi<sub>3</sub> ge<sub>3</sub> lou<sub>5</sub> po<sub>4</sub>.

***Alright. Good night my dear Wife.***

乙

早 啱 我 親 愛 嘅 老 公 . 我  
愛 你 .

zou<sup>-2</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> can<sup>-1</sup> oi<sup>-3</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> lou<sub>,5</sub> gung<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> oi<sup>-3</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub>.

***Good night my dear Husband. I love you.***

甲

我 都 愛 你 .

ngo<sub>,5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> oi<sup>-3</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub>.

***I love you too.***



# 第二任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 2

菠蘿包喺邊呀

bo<sup>-1</sup> lo<sub>-4</sub> baau<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>

***Where The Pineapple Buns At***

晏 晝

aan-3 zau-3

**Noon**

飯

faan-6

**Meal. Rice.**

晏 晝 飯

aan-3 zau-3 faan-6

**Lunch (Noon Meal)**

早

zou<sup>-2</sup>

**Morning**

餐

caan<sup>-1</sup>

**Meal**

早餐

zou<sup>-2</sup> caan<sup>-1</sup>

**Breakfast (Morning Meal)**

晚

maan<sub>5</sub>

***Evening/Night***

晚餐

maan<sub>5</sub> caan<sup>-1</sup>

***Dinner (Evening Meal)***

煮

zyu<sup>-2</sup>

**To cook**

煮 飯

zyu<sup>-2</sup> faan<sub>-6</sub>

**To cook dinner**

煲

bou<sup>-1</sup>

**To boil**

煲 水

bou<sup>-1</sup> seoi<sup>-2</sup>

**To boil water**

整

zing<sup>2</sup>

**To prepare. To make.**

整 三 文 治

zing<sup>2</sup> saam<sup>1</sup> man<sub>4</sub> zi<sub>6</sub>

**To make a sandwich**

整 茶

zing<sup>2</sup> caa<sub>4</sub>

**To make tea**

整 嘢 食

zing<sup>2</sup> je<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>

**To make something to eat**

廳

teng<sup>-1</sup>

**Room. Hall.**

餐廳

caan<sup>-1</sup> teng<sup>-1</sup>

**Restaurant (Meal Hall)**

茶餐廳

caa<sub>~4</sub> caan<sup>-1</sup> teng<sup>-1</sup>

**Hong Kong Style Diner**

點心

dim<sup>2</sup> sam<sup>1</sup>

***Dim Sum***

飲茶

jam<sup>2</sup> caa<sub>4</sub>

***Yam Cha (lit. To drink tea)***

酒樓

zau<sup>2</sup> lau<sub>4</sub>

***Chinese Restaurant (Dim Sum / Yam Cha)***

茶走

caa<sub>4</sub> zau<sup>2</sup>

***A popular Hong Kong Condensed Milk-based Milk Tea (Yum!)***

菠 蘿

bo<sup>-1</sup> lo<sub>4</sub>

**Pineapple**

包

baau<sup>-1</sup>

**Bun. Bread. Bag.**

菠 蘿 包

bo<sup>-1</sup> lo<sub>4</sub> baau<sup>-1</sup>

**Pineapple Bun**

腸粉

coeng<sup>-2</sup> fan<sup>-2</sup>

**Steamed Rice Roll**

燒賣

siu<sup>-1</sup> maai<sub>-6</sub>

**Cantonese-Style Pork Dumpling (Usually also has Shrimp)**

餃子

gaau<sup>-2</sup> zi<sup>-2</sup>

**Dumpling(s)**

炒

caau<sup>2</sup>

***To stir-fry***

炒 飯

caau<sup>2</sup> faan<sub>6</sub>

***Stir-fried Rice***

炒 麵

caau<sup>2</sup> min<sub>6</sub>

***Stir-fried Noodles***

炸

zaa-3

**To fry**

雞

gai<sup>-1</sup>

**Chicken**

炸 雞

zaa-3 gai<sup>-1</sup>

**Fried Chicken**

炸 雞 翼

zaa-3 gai<sup>-1</sup> jik<sub>-6</sub>

**Fried Chicken Wings**

燒

siu<sup>-1</sup>

***To roast. To bake. To BBQ.***

叉 燒

caa<sup>-1</sup> siu<sup>-1</sup>

***BBQ Pork***

叉 燒 包

caa<sup>-1</sup> siu<sup>-1</sup> baau<sup>-1</sup>

***BBQ Pork Buns***

請

cing<sup>2</sup>

**To invite. To treat.**

請 你 食 飯

cing<sup>2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> faan<sub>6</sub>

**Treat you for dinner**

我 想 請 你 食 飯 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>2</sup> cing<sup>2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> faan<sub>6</sub>.

**I want to treat you for dinner.**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

我好肚餓。而家會煮飯。

你想唔想陪我食飯呀？

乙

---

梗係啦。多謝。其實我而

家都肚餓。

甲

---

好啊。我好開心。其實  
我食晚餐嗰陣鍾意食點  
心。所以我會整餃子，又  
燒包，腸粉，同埋燒賣。好  
唔好呀？

乙

好啊。如果我哋會食點心，我哋一定要飲茶。你有冇茶？

甲

有，有。

乙

好啊。多謝你請我食飯。

甲

---

唔使客氣。我哋係好朋友。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我好肚餓。而家會煮飯。  
你想唔想陪我食飯呀？

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>2</sup> tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub>. ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> zyu<sup>2</sup> faan<sub>6</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub>  
soeng<sup>2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> soeng<sup>2</sup> pui<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> faan<sub>6</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***I'm very hungry. I'm going to cook dinner now. Do you want to join me for dinner?***

乙

梗係啦。多謝。其實我而  
家都肚餓。

gang<sup>2</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>. do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>6</sub>. kei<sub>4</sub> sat<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup>  
dou<sup>-1</sup> tou<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>6</sub>.

***Of course. Thank you. Actually, I'm also hungry.***

甲

好啊。我好開心。其實  
我食晚餐嗰陣鍾意食點心。  
所以我會整餃子，叉  
燒包，腸粉，同埋燒賣。好  
唔好呀？

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-3</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>. kei<sub>4</sub> sat<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub>  
maan<sub>5</sub> caan<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>6</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>. so<sup>-2</sup>  
ji<sub>5</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> zing<sup>-2</sup> gaau<sup>-2</sup> zi<sup>-2</sup>, caa<sup>-1</sup> siu<sup>-1</sup> baau<sup>-1</sup>, coeng<sup>-2</sup>  
fan<sup>-2</sup>, tung<sub>4</sub> maai<sub>4</sub> siu<sup>-1</sup> maai<sub>6</sub>. hou<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**Cool. I'm glad. When I eat dinner I actually like eating Dim Sum. So I'm going to make Pork Dumplings, BBQ Pork Buns, Steamed Rice Roll, and Cantonese-Style Pork Dumplings.**

乙

好啊。如果我哋會食點心，我哋一定要飲茶。你有冇茶？

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-3</sup>. jyu<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup>  
sam<sup>-1</sup>, ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>-4</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>  
mou<sub>5</sub> caa<sub>-4</sub>?

***Nice. If we are going to eat Dim Sum, we definitely need to drink tea. Do you have tea?***

甲

有，有。

jau<sub>5</sub>, jau<sub>5</sub>.

***Yes, I do.***

乙

好啊. 多謝你請我食飯.

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-3</sup>. do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> cing<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub> faan<sub>-6</sub>.

***Good. Thank you for treating me for dinner.***

甲

唔使客氣. 我哋係好朋友.  
友.

m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> haak<sup>-3</sup> hei<sup>-3</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> pang<sub>-4</sub> jau<sub>5</sub>.

***No need to be so polite. We are good friends.***



# 第三任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 3**

# 我要屙尿

ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> o<sup>-1</sup> niu<sub>-6</sub>

## **I Gotta Pee**

醫 生

ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>

**Doctor (Medical)**

睇 醫 生

tai<sup>-2</sup> ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>

**To go see the doctor**

我 要 睇 醫 生 .

ngo<sup>5</sup> jiu<sup>-3</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

**I need to go see the doctor.**

紙

zi<sup>-2</sup>

**Paper**

醫生紙

ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-2</sup>

**Doctor's Note (lit. Doctor Paper)**

醫生，可唔可以俾醫生  
紙我？

ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>, ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> bei<sup>-2</sup> ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub>?

**Doctor, can you give me a Doctor's Note?**

約

joek-3

***To make an appointment. Appointment.***

約 醫 生

joek-3 ji-1 saang-1

***To make a doctor's appointment.***

舒 服

syu-1 fuk-6

***Comfortable***

唔 舒 服

m-4 syu-1 fuk-6

***Uncomfortable (feeling sick)***

我 唔 舒 服 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>6</sub>.

***I'm not feeling well.***

痛

tung-3

***Pain. Ache.***

頭

tau-2

***Head***

頭痛

tau-2 tung-3

***Headache (lit. Head Hurt)***

肚

tou\_5

***Stomach***

肚 痛

tou<sub>5</sub> tung<sub>3</sub>

***Stomachache (lit. Stomach Hurt)***

喉 嚨

hau<sub>4</sub> lung<sub>4</sub>

***Throat***

喉 嚨 痛

hau<sub>4</sub> lung<sub>4</sub> tung<sub>3</sub>

***Sore Throat (lit. Throat Hurt)***

感冒

gam<sup>-2</sup> mou<sub>-6</sub>

**Cold. Flu.**

發燒

faat<sup>-3</sup> siu<sup>-1</sup>

**Fever**

頭暈

tau<sup>-2</sup> wan<sub>-4</sub>

**Dizzy**

作嘔

zok<sup>-3</sup> au<sup>-2</sup>

**Nausea. Nauseous.**

洗

sai<sup>-2</sup>

**To wash**

手

sau<sup>-2</sup>

**Hand**

洗 手

sai<sup>-2</sup> sau<sup>-2</sup>

**To wash hands**

洗 手 間

sai<sup>-2</sup> sau<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup>

**Bathroom (Formal) (lit. Wash Hands Room)**

廁所

ci-3 so<sup>-2</sup>

**Toilet (Informal) (Bathroom)**

唔該，廁所喺邊度？

m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, ci-3 so<sup>-2</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>?

**Excuse me, where is the toilet (Bathroom)?**

屙

o<sup>-1</sup>

**To excrete**

尿

niu<sub>-6</sub>

**Pee. Urine.**

屙 尿

o<sup>-1</sup>

niu<sub>-6</sub>

**To pee (Informal)**

屎

si<sup>-2</sup>

**Poop**

屙 屎

o<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

***To poop (Informal)***

急

gap<sup>-1</sup>

***Urge / Urgent***

急 尿

gap<sup>-1</sup> niu<sub>-6</sub>

***Urge to pee (Informal)***

我 急 尿 !

ngo<sub>5</sub> gap<sup>-1</sup> niu<sub>-6</sub>!

***I need to urgently pee!***

急 屎

gap<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

***Urge to poop (Informal)***

我 急 屎！

ngo˥˩ gap˨˩ si˨˩!

***I need to urgently poop!***

糖

tong<sub>4</sub>

**Sugar**

病

beng<sub>6</sub>

**Disease. Sickness.**

糖 尿 病

tong<sub>4</sub> niu<sub>6</sub> beng<sub>6</sub>

**Diabetes (lit. Sweet Urine Disease)**

次

ci-3

**Frequency/Repetition. Number of Times.**

幾次

gei<sup>-2</sup> ci-3

**How many times**

三次

saam<sup>-1</sup> ci-3

**3 Times**

我 三 次 去 咗 洗 手 間 屙  
尿。

ngo<sub>5</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> ci-3 heoi-3 zo<sup>-2</sup> sai<sup>-2</sup> sau<sup>-2</sup> gaan<sup>-1</sup> o<sup>-1</sup> niu<sub>6</sub>.

**I went to the bathroom to pee three times.**

藥

joek<sub>-6</sub>

**Medicine**

西 藥

sai<sup>-1</sup> joek<sub>-6</sub>

**Western Medicine**

中 藥

zung<sup>-1</sup> joek<sub>-6</sub>

**Chinese Medicine**

西 藥 房

sai<sup>-1</sup> joek<sub>-6</sub> fong<sub>-4</sub>

**Western Pharmacy**

叫

giu-3

***To call. To be called.***

我叫俊樂。

ngo\_5 giu-3 zeon-3 lok\_6.

***I'm called Zeon Lok (My name is Zeon Lok).***

姓

sing-3

***Last Name (Family Name)***

我姓范叫俊樂。

ngo\_5 sing-3 faan\_6 giu-3 zeon-3 lok\_6.

***My family name is Faan, and my first name is Zeon Lok.***

請

cing<sup>2</sup>

**May I (Formal)**

請 問

cing<sup>2</sup> man<sub>6</sub>

**May I please ask (Formal)**

請 問，你 貴 姓？

cing<sup>2</sup> man<sub>6</sub>, nei<sub>5</sub> gwai<sub>3</sub> sing<sub>3</sub>?

**May I please ask, what is your honorable name? (Formal)**

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Saying That You Are Or Are Not Feeling Well: 舒服 + 唔舒服**

When you want to say you are not feeling well, you say 我唔舒服 (ngo<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>6</sub>). However, when you want to say you are feeling well, you don't say 我舒服 (ngo<sub>5</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>6</sub>), but can just say 我好好 (ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>).

你 舒 唔 舒 服 呀?

nei<sub>5</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>6</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**Are you feeling ok?**

我 好 好 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>.

**I'm feeling good.**

唔 舒 服 . 我 頭 痛 .

m<sub>4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>6</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> tau<sup>-2</sup> tung<sup>-3</sup>.

**No I'm not. I have a headache.**

## **Names In Cantonese**

When you want to speak about names in Cantonese, the family name always comes first. There are also formal and casual ways of asking for a name. Using 請 (cing<sup>-2</sup>) or saying 你貴姓 (nei<sub>5</sub> gwai<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-3</sup>) is considered formal speech.

請問

cing<sup>-2</sup> man<sub>6</sub>

**May I please ask ...**

你貴姓？

nei<sub>5</sub> gwai<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-3</sup>?

**What is your honorable name?**

請問，你貴姓？

cing<sup>-2</sup> man<sub>6</sub>, nei<sub>5</sub> gwai<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-3</sup>?

**May I please ask what is your honorable name?**

我姓范叫俊樂。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sing<sup>-3</sup> faan<sub>6</sub> giu<sup>-3</sup> zeon<sup>-3</sup> lok<sub>6</sub>.

**My last name is Fan, first name Zeon Lok.**

你 叫 乜 嘢 名?

nei<sub>5</sub> giu<sub>3</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> ming<sub>4</sub>?

**What is your name? (lit. What are you called)**

你 叫 咩 名 呀?

nei<sub>5</sub> giu<sub>3</sub> me<sup>-1</sup> ming<sub>4</sub> aa<sub>4</sub>?

**What is your name? (lit. What are you called)**

我 叫 俊 樂 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> giu<sub>3</sub> zeon<sub>3</sub> lok<sub>6</sub>.

**My name is Zeon Lok. (lit. I'm called ...)**

我 叫 范 俊 樂 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> giu<sub>3</sub> faan<sub>6</sub> zeon<sub>3</sub> lok<sub>6</sub>.

**My name is Faan Zeon Lok. (lit. I'm called ...)**

**Express The Completeness Of Something: 晒**

You can use 晒 (saai-3) to indicate the completeness of what it's connected to.

我食晒三文治。

ngo<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>6</sub> saai-3 saam<sup>-1</sup> man<sub>4</sub> zi<sub>6</sub>.

***I ate all the sandwiches.***

我睇晒齣戲。

ngo<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> saai-3 ceot<sup>-1</sup> hei-3.

***I saw all the movies.***

唔該

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>

***Thank you. (Service, Assistance)***

唔該晒

m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup> saai-3

***Thank you very much. (Service, Assistance)***

多謝

do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub>

***Thank you. (Gifts, Compliments)***

多謝晒

do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub> saai<sub>-3</sub>

***Thank you very much. (Gifts, Compliments)***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

你好。我今朝約到醫生。

唔舒服所以要見佢。

乙

---

請問，你叫乜嘢名？

甲

---

我姓 Leong 叫 Bethany.

乙

---

我搵到你。你九點四約

醫生。

甲

---

係啲。

乙

---

好。你可以喺嗰度等醫

生。

甲

唔該。

十五分鐘頭之後

丙

早晨 Bethany. 聽講今日

唔舒服。

甲

---

係喎. 我喉嚨痛同發燒.  
覺得我感冒.

丙

---

好呀. 我會俾藥你食. 一  
日三次食. 一個禮拜之  
後唔使食.

甲

---

好。唔該晒醫生。

丙

---

唔使。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你好。我今朝約到醫生。  
唔舒服所以要見佢。

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup> joek<sup>-3</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>. m<sub>4</sub>  
syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>6</sub> so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> gin<sup>-3</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub>.

***Hello. I have an appointment scheduled with the doctor this morning. I'm not feeling well so I need to see him.***

乙

請問，你叫乜嘢名？

cing<sup>-2</sup> man<sub>6</sub>, nei<sub>5</sub> giu<sup>-3</sup> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> ming<sub>4</sub>?

***What's your name?***

甲

我 姓 Leong 叫 Bethany.

ngo<sub>5</sub> sing<sup>-3</sup> Leong giu<sup>-3</sup> Bethany.

***My last name is Loeng, first name Bethany.***

乙

我 搵 到 你 . 你 九 點 四 約  
醫 生 .

ngo<sub>5</sub> wan<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> gau<sup>-2</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> sei<sup>-3</sup> joek<sup>-3</sup>  
ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

***I found you. You have an appointment scheduled with the  
doctor for 9:20.***

甲

係 啎 .

hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>-3</sub>.

**Yes.**

乙

好 . 你 可 以 喺 嗰 度 等 醫  
生 .

hou<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>-5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>-5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> dang<sup>-2</sup> ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

**Ok. You can wait for the doctor over there.**

甲

唔該。

m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>.

**Thank you.**

十五分鐘頭之後

sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub>

**15 Minutes Later**

丙

早晨 Bethany. 聽講今日  
唔舒服。

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>~4</sub> Bethany. ting<sub>-3</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>~4</sub> syu<sup>-1</sup> fuk<sub>-6</sub>.

***Good morning Bethany. I heard that you weren't feeling well today.***

甲

係喎。我喉嚨痛同發燒。  
覺得我感冒。

hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>-3</sub>. ngo<sub>~5</sub> hau<sub>~4</sub> lung<sub>~4</sub> tung<sub>-3</sub> tung<sub>~4</sub> faat<sub>-3</sub> siu<sup>-1</sup>.  
gok<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>~5</sub> gam<sup>-2</sup> mou<sub>-6</sub>.

***Yes. I have a sore throat and a fever. I think I have a cold.***

丙

好呀。我會俾藥你食。一日三次食。一個禮拜之後唔使食。

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> bei<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>. jat<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>  
saam<sup>-1</sup> ci<sub>-3</sub> sik<sub>-6</sub>. jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> lai<sub>5</sub> baai<sub>-3</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub>  
sai<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>-6</sub>.

**Alright. I will give you medicine for you to take. Take it three times a day. After one week you don't need to take it.**

甲

好。唔該晒醫生。

hou<sup>-2</sup>. m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup> saai<sub>-3</sub> ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>.

**Alright. Thank you very much doctor.**

丙

唔使。

m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>2</sup>.

***You're welcome.***



# 第四任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 4**

# 我仲要俾錢

ngo<sub>5</sub> zung<sub>-6</sub> jiu<sub>-3</sub> bei<sub>-2</sub> cin<sub>-4</sub>

## ***I Still Need To Pay***

開始

hoi<sup>-1</sup> ci<sup>-2</sup>

***To start***

我開始飲茶。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hoi<sup>-1</sup> ci<sup>-2</sup> jam<sup>-2</sup> caa<sub>4</sub>.

***I started to drink tea.***

運動

wan<sub>-6</sub> dung<sub>-6</sub>

**Motion**

做運動

zou<sub>-6</sub> wan<sub>-6</sub> dung<sub>-6</sub>

**To exercise (lit. to do motion)**

我會做運動。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> zou<sub>-6</sub> wan<sub>-6</sub> dung<sub>-6</sub>.

**I will exercise.**

繼續

gai-3    zuk-6

***To continue***

我會繼續做運動。

ngo-5    wui-5    gai-3    zuk-6    zou-6    wan-6    dung-6.

***I will continue to exercise.***

票

piu-3

***Ticket***

飛 機 票

fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> piu-3

***Airplane Ticket***

機 票

gei<sup>-1</sup> piu-3

***Airplane Ticket***

一 張 機 票

jat<sup>-1</sup> zoeng<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> piu-3

***1 Airplane Ticket***

我 買 咗 一 張 機 票

ngo<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> zoeng<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> piu<sup>-3</sup>

***I bought one airplane ticket.***

我 買 咗 張 機 票 。

ngo<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup> zoeng<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> piu<sup>-3</sup>.

***I bought one airplane ticket.***

俾錢

bei<sup>-2</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>

**To pay (to give money)**

免費

min<sub>-5</sub> fai<sup>-3</sup>

**Free (Price)**

因為呢張機票免費

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> zoeng<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> piu<sup>-3</sup> min<sub>-5</sub> fai<sup>-3</sup>

**Because this ticket was free**

因為呢張機票免費，我  
唔使俾錢。

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> zoeng<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> piu<sup>-3</sup> min<sub>-5</sub> fai<sup>-3</sup>, ngo<sub>-5</sub> m<sub>-4</sub>  
sai<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>.

**Because this ticket was free, I don't need to pay.**

戲

hei-3

**Movie**

一齣戲

jat<sup>-1</sup> ceot<sup>-1</sup> hei-3

**A Movie**

戲

hei-3

**Movie**

戲院

hei-3 jyun-2

**Movie Theater**

一間戲院

jat-1 gaan-1 hei-3 jyun-2

**A Movie Theater**

你 喺 戲 院 可 以 睇 戲 .

nei-5 hai-2 hei-3 jyun-2 ho-2 ji-5 tai-2 hei-3.

**You can watch movies at the movie theater.**

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

我爸爸想請我哋食飯。

禮拜日好唔好呀？

乙

我好開心。我要話俾佢

聽多謝。星期日好。

甲

好。我會講俾佢知。

乙

好. 唔該. 你呢個星期五  
會做咩呀?

甲

星期五朝早十一點會做  
運動. 之後冇嘢做.

乙

---

好。其實我想問你如果  
你想陪我去睇戲？

甲

---

真係？梗係拉。一定想去。  
但係等我請你。

乙

---

唔使。啲票免費。我唔使  
俾錢。如果要俾錢，一定  
唔去。

甲

---

哦。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我爸爸想請我哋食飯。  
禮拜日好唔好呀？

ngo<sub>5</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> soeng<sup>-2</sup> cing<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>6</sub> faan<sub>6</sub> lai<sub>5</sub>  
baai<sup>-3</sup> jat<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>4</sub>?

***My dad wants to treat us both for dinner. Is Sunday good?***

乙

我好開心。我要話俾佢  
聽多謝。星期日好。

ngo<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> jiu<sup>-3</sup> waa<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> ting<sup>-3</sup>  
do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>6</sub>. sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>4</sub> jat<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>.

***I'm very happy. I need to say thank you to him. Sunday is good.***

甲

好。我會講俾佢知。

hou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> gong<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> keoi<sub>,5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>.

**Good. I'll let him know.**

乙

好。唔該。你呢個星期五  
會做咩呀？

hou<sup>-2</sup>. m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>,5</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> ng<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub>  
zou<sub>-6</sub> me<sup>-1</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

**Ok. Thank you. What are you doing this Friday?**

甲

星 期 五 朝 早 十 一 點 會 做  
運 動 . 之 後 冇 嘢 做 .

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>4</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> ziu<sup>-1</sup> zou<sup>-2</sup> sap<sub>6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub>  
wan<sub>6</sub> dung<sub>6</sub>. zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> je<sub>5</sub> zou<sub>6</sub>.

***I'm going to exercise at 11 in the morning. I don't have anything to do afterwards.***

乙

好 . 其 實 我 想 問 你 如 果  
你 想 陪 我 去 睇 戲 ?

hou<sup>-2</sup>. kei<sub>4</sub> sat<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> man<sub>6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>5</sub>  
soeng<sup>-2</sup> pui<sub>4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>3</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> hei<sub>3</sub>?

***Good. I actually wanted to ask you if you wanted to go see a movie with me?***

甲

真係？梗係拉。一定想去。  
但係等我請你。

zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub>? gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> laai<sup>-1</sup>. jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sub>-3</sub>.  
daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> dang<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>,5</sub> cing<sup>-2</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub>.

**Really? Of course. I definitely want to go. But let me treat you.**

乙

唔使。啲票免費。我唔使  
俾錢。如果要俾錢，一定  
唔去。

m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>. di<sup>-1</sup> piu<sub>-3</sub> min<sub>,5</sub> fai<sub>-3</sub>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>.  
jyu<sub>-4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup> jiu<sub>-3</sub> bei<sup>-2</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>, jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub>.

**No need. The tickets were free. I didn't need to spend any money. If I needed to pay, I definitely wouldn't go.**

甲

---

哦·

0-4·

**Oh.**



# 第五任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 5**

我可以車你去機場

ngo<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> gei<sup>-1</sup> coeng<sub>-4</sub>

***I Can Drive You To The Airport***

老師

lou<sub>5</sub> si<sup>-1</sup>

**Teacher**

一位老師

jat<sup>-1</sup> wai<sup>-2</sup> lou<sub>5</sub> si<sup>-1</sup>

**A teacher**

教

gaau-3

**To teach**

嗰位老師教緊

go<sup>-2</sup> wai<sup>-2</sup> lou<sub>5</sub> si<sup>-1</sup> gaau-3 gan<sup>-2</sup>

**That teacher is teaching**

嗰位老師教緊嗰啲學生  
寫字。

go<sup>-2</sup> wai<sup>-2</sup> lou<sub>5</sub> si<sup>-1</sup> gaau-3 gan<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> hok<sub>6</sub> saang<sup>-1</sup>  
se<sup>-2</sup> zi<sub>6</sub>.

**That teacher is teaching those students how to write characters.**

律 師

leot<sub>-6</sub> si<sup>-1</sup>

**Lawyer**

文 件

man<sub>-4</sub> gin<sub>-6</sub>

**Document**

嗰 啲 律 師 寫 緊 文 件 。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> leot<sub>-6</sub> si<sup>-1</sup> se<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> man<sub>-4</sub> gin<sub>-6</sub>.

**Those lawyers are writing documents.**

行

hang<sub>-4</sub>

**To walk**

我會行個度。

ngo<sub>,5</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> hang<sub>-4</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

**I will walk over there.**

一直

jat<sup>-1</sup> zik<sub>-6</sub>

***Straight***

我會一直行個度。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zik<sub>-6</sub> hang<sub>-4</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***I will walk straight there.***

馬

maa<sub>5</sub>

**Horse**

路

lou<sub>6</sub>

**Path**

馬 路

maa<sub>5</sub> lou<sub>6</sub>

**Road (Horse Path)**

一 條 馬 路

jat<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> maa<sub>5</sub> lou<sub>6</sub>

**A road**

我 喺 呢 條 馬 路 一 直 行。  
ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> maa<sub>5</sub> lou<sub>6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zik<sub>6</sub> hang<sub>4</sub>.

***I am walking straight on this road.***

塞

sak<sup>-1</sup>

**To obstruct**

塞 車

sak<sup>-1</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>

**Traffic Jam**

呢 條 馬 路 塞 車 .

ni<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> maa<sub>5</sub> lou<sub>6</sub> sak<sup>-1</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

**This road is blocked by traffic.**

鼻

bei<sub>-6</sub>

**Nose**

鼻塞

bei<sub>-6</sub> sak<sup>-1</sup>

**Stuffy Nose. Congestion. (Blocked Nose)**

因為我感冒，我鼻塞啦。

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> gam<sup>-2</sup> mou<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> bei<sub>-6</sub> sak<sup>-1</sup> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

**Because I have a cold, my nose is blocked.**

停

ting<sub>4</sub>

**To stop**

喺 嗰 度 停 車 .

hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> ting<sub>4</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>.

**Stop the car over there.**

轉

zyun-3

**To turn**

燈

dang<sup>-1</sup>

**Light**

紅 綠 燈

hung<sup>-4</sup> luk<sup>-6</sup> dang<sup>-1</sup>

**Traffic Light (lit. Red Green Light)**

泊 車

paak-3 ce<sup>-1</sup>

**To park**

喺 嗰 個 紅 綠 燈 轉 右

hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hung<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> dang<sup>-1</sup> zyun<sup>-3</sup> jau<sup>-2</sup>

**Turn right at that traffic light**

喺 嗰 個 紅 綠 燈 轉 右 就 泊  
車 啦。

hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> hung<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> dang<sup>-1</sup> zyun<sup>-3</sup> jau<sup>-2</sup> zau<sub>-6</sub> paak<sup>-3</sup>  
ce<sup>-1</sup> laa<sup>-1</sup>.

**Turn right at that traffic light and then park the car.**

得閒

dak<sup>-1</sup> haan<sub>~4</sub>

***To be available (to have free time)***

你而家得唔得閒呀？

nei<sub>~5</sub> ji<sub>~4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> dak<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> haan<sub>~4</sub> aa<sub>~4</sub>?

***Are you available now?***

我而家唔得閒。

ngo<sub>~5</sub> ji<sub>~4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> haan<sub>~4</sub>.

***I'm not available right now.***

忙

mong<sub>-4</sub>

**To be busy**

你 而 家 忙 唔 忙 呀？

nei<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> mong<sub>-4</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> mong<sub>-4</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

**Are you busy now?**

我 而 家 好 忙。

ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> mong<sub>-4</sub>.

**I'm very busy now.**

飛機

fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

***Airplane***

飛機場

fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> coeng<sub>-4</sub>

***Airport (lit. Airplane Field)***

機場

gei<sup>-1</sup> coeng<sub>-4</sub>

***Airport***

車

ce<sup>-1</sup>

***To drive someone (slang) (lit. Car)***

我可以車你去機場。

ngo<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup> coeng<sub>-4</sub>.

***I can drive you to the airport.***

話

waa<sup>2</sup>

**To say**

佢話佢唔知。

keoi<sub>5</sub> waa<sup>2</sup> keoi<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>.

***She said she doesn't know.***

一

jat<sup>-1</sup>

**1**

一 到

jat<sup>-1</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup>

**1 to**

一 到 九

jat<sup>-1</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>

**1 to 9**

我到咗

ngo˥˩ dou˨˨˦ zo˨˨˦

***I've arrived.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**Multiple Ways To Say A Block:** 街 + 紅綠燈

You can represent a block by either just saying a **street**, 街 (gai<sup>-1</sup>), or you can say a traffic light, 紅綠燈 (hung<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> dang<sup>-1</sup>). Thus, three traffic lights is a representation of three blocks.

兩條街

loeng<sub>5</sub> tiu<sub>-4</sub> gai<sup>-1</sup>

**Two blocks**

兩個紅綠燈

loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> hung<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> dang<sup>-1</sup>

**Two blocks**

**To Drive Someone Using The Word: 車**

In Cantonese, you can use the noun for car, 車 (ce<sup>-1</sup>), as a verb, which turns it into a convenient way to say you are driving someone.

我想車你返屋企。

ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> faan<sup>-1</sup> uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>.

***I want to drive you back home. (lit. I want to car you back home)***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

我六點半放工。真係想  
去睇戲。

乙

---

係啲。我一定可以飲一  
杯啤酒。你想唔想睇戲  
之後飲酒？

甲

---

可以啦。我可以車你去  
個度。

乙

---

唔該晒。你知唔知點去  
個度？

甲

---

唔知，但係可以睇吓我  
嘅地圖。

乙

---

好。

甲

---

地圖話我哋要揸車二十  
個紅綠燈，轉左，之後繼  
續揸五條街就落車。仲  
要行五分鐘就到。

乙

---

好啊。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

我六點半放工。真係想去睇戲。

ngo<sub>5</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> dim<sup>-2</sup> bun<sub>-3</sub> fong<sub>-3</sub> gung<sup>-1</sup>. zan<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup>  
heoi<sub>-3</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> hei<sub>-3</sub>.

***I get off work at 6:30. I really want to go watch a movie.***

乙

係 啲 . 我 一 定 可 以 飲 一  
杯 啤 酒 . 你 想 唔 想 睇 戲  
之 後 飲 酒 ?

hai<sub>-6</sub> wo<sub>-3</sub>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>,5</sub> jam<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> bui<sup>-1</sup>  
be<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>,5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> tai<sup>-2</sup> hei<sub>-3</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub>  
jam<sup>-2</sup> zau<sup>-2</sup>?

***Yea. I really could drink a beer. Do you want to watch a movie  
and then go drink alcohol?***

甲

可 以 啦 . 我 可 以 車 你 去  
個 度 .

ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>,5</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>,5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>,5</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>,5</sub> heoi<sub>-3</sub> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>.

***Yea I can. I can drive you over there.***

乙

唔該晒。你知唔知點去  
個度？

m<sub>~4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup> saai<sup>-3</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> dim<sup>-2</sup> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>?

***Thank you very much. Do you know how to go there?***

甲

唔知，但係可以睇吓我  
嘅地圖。

m<sub>~4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>, daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> tai<sup>-2</sup> haa<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sup>-3</sup>  
dei<sub>6</sub> tou<sub>4</sub>.

***I don't but I can take a look at my map.***

乙

---

好。

hou<sup>2</sup>.

***Alright.***

甲

地圖話我哋要揸車二十  
個紅綠燈，轉左，之後繼  
續揸五條街就落車。仲  
要行五分鐘就到。

dei<sub>6</sub> tou<sub>4</sub> waa<sup>-2</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jiu<sub>3</sub> zaa<sup>-1</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>6</sub> sap<sub>6</sub>  
go<sub>3</sub> hung<sub>4</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> dang<sup>-1</sup>, zyun<sub>3</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup>, zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>6</sub> gai<sub>3</sub> zuk<sub>6</sub>  
zaa<sup>-1</sup> ng<sub>5</sub> tiu<sub>4</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup> zau<sub>6</sub> lok<sub>6</sub> ce<sup>-1</sup>. zung<sub>6</sub> jiu<sub>3</sub> hang<sub>4</sub>  
ng<sub>5</sub> fan<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> zau<sub>6</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>.

***The map says we need to drive the car for 20 blocks, turn left,  
and then afterwards continue driving for 5 blocks, then we  
off the car. We still need to walk 5 minutes, and then we'll  
be there.***

乙

---

好啊。

hou<sup>2</sup> aa-3.

***Alright, sounds good.***



# 第六任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## Quest 6

# 着件褸定帶手套

zoek<sub>-3</sub> gin<sub>-6</sub> lau<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>-6</sub> daai<sub>-3</sub> sau<sup>-2</sup> tou<sub>-3</sub>

***Wear The Jacket Or Wear The Gloves***

衫

saam<sup>-1</sup>

**Shirt**

一件衫

jat<sup>-1</sup> gin<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup>

**A shirt**

着

zoek-3

*To wear (for stuff worn directly on your body)*

我 着 一 件 衫

ngo<sub>5</sub> zoek-3 jat<sup>-1</sup> gin<sub>6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup>

*I wear a shirt.*

我 着 件 衫

ngo<sub>5</sub> zoek-3 gin<sub>6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup>

*I wear a shirt.*

褸

lau<sup>-1</sup>

**Jacket**

一件褸

jat<sup>-1</sup> gin<sub>-6</sub> lau<sup>-1</sup>

**A jacket**

我會着件褸。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> zoek<sub>-3</sub> gin<sub>-6</sub> lau<sup>-1</sup>.

***I'm going to wear a jacket.***

牛仔

ngau<sub>4</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup>

**Cowboy**

牛仔褲

ngau<sub>4</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup> fu<sub>-3</sub>

**Jeans (lit. Cowboy Pants)**

一條牛仔褲

jat<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> ngau<sub>4</sub> zai<sup>-2</sup> fu<sub>-3</sub>

**A pair of jeans**

帶

daai-3

*To wear (for accessories, stuff worn on your extremities)*

帽

mou<sup>-2</sup>

**Hat**

一 頂 帽

jat<sup>-1</sup>

deng<sup>-2</sup>

mou<sup>-2</sup>

**A hat**

我 帶 一 頂 帽 .

ngo<sub>,5</sub>

daai-3

jat<sup>-1</sup>

deng<sup>-2</sup>

mou<sup>-2</sup>.

**I wear a hat.**

我帶頂帽。

ngo<sub>5</sub> daai-3 deng<sup>2</sup> mou<sup>2</sup>.

***I wear a hat.***

我帶手套。

ngo<sub>5</sub> daai-3 sau<sup>2</sup> tou-3.

***I wear gloves.***

我帶襪。

ngo<sub>5</sub> daai-3 mat<sub>-6</sub>.

***I wear socks.***

對

deoi-3

***A pair***

一對襪

jat<sup>-1</sup> deoi-3 mat<sub>-6</sub>

***A pair of socks.***

一對手套

jat<sup>-1</sup> deoi-3 sau<sup>-2</sup> tou-3

***A pair of gloves.***

一隻襪

jat<sup>-1</sup> zek-3 mat<sub>-6</sub>

***A single sock.***

一隻手套

jat<sup>-1</sup> zek-<sub>3</sub> sau<sup>-2</sup> tou-<sub>3</sub>

***A single glove.***

尋 寶

cam<sub>4</sub> bou<sup>2</sup>

***Searching For Treasures***

**The Different Verbs For Wearing Something: 帶 + 着**

In Cantonese, the verb you use for wearing depends on where on the body the thing you are wearing is located in. If it's in your extremities (usually accessories), then you will use 帶 (daai-3), if it's on your body directly (like a coat, dress, shirt), then you use 着 (zoek-3).

我 着 頂 帽 .

ngo,5 zoek-3 deng<sup>2</sup> mou<sup>2</sup>.

***I wear the hat.***

我 帶 領 呔 .

ngo,5 daai-3 ling,5 taai<sup>1</sup>.

***I wear the tie.***

大佬

daai<sub>-6</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

**Boss**

甲

---

你覺唔覺得你媽媽會鍾  
意呢頂紅色帽？

乙

---

佢唔鍾意紅色啲嘢。不  
如你買綠色嘅？

甲

---

綠色嘅都好靚。襪呢？你  
覺唔覺得佢會鍾意呢對  
黃色嘅襪？

乙

---

會。綠色嘅頂帽同黃色  
嘅襪好靚。我會係好開  
心。

甲

---

好啊。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

甲

你覺唔覺得你媽媽會鍾  
意呢頂紅色帽？

nei<sub>5</sub> gok<sup>-3</sup> m<sub>4</sub> gok<sup>-3</sup> dak<sup>-1</sup> nei<sub>5</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup>  
ji<sup>-3</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> deng<sup>-2</sup> hung<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> mou<sup>-2</sup>?

***Do you think your mom is going to like this red hat?***

乙

佢唔鍾意紅色啲嘢。不  
如你買綠色嘅？

keoi<sub>5</sub> m<sub>4</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> hung<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> bat<sup>-1</sup> jyu<sub>4</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>  
maai<sub>5</sub> luk<sub>6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>?

***She doesn't like red stuff. Why don't you buy the green one?***

甲

綠色嘅都好靚。襪呢？你  
覺唔覺得佢會鍾意呢對  
黃色嘅襪？

luk<sub>-6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sub>-3</sub> mat<sub>-6</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup>? nei<sub>-5</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub>  
m<sub>-4</sub> gok<sub>-3</sub> dak<sup>-1</sup> keoi<sub>-5</sub> wui<sub>-5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> ni<sup>-1</sup> deoi<sub>-3</sub> wong<sub>-4</sub>  
sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>-3</sub> mat<sub>-6</sub>?

***The green one is also beautiful. What about socks? Do you think she will like this pair of yellow socks?***

乙

會· 綠色嘅頂帽同黃色  
嘅襪好靚· 我會係好開  
心·

wui<sub>5</sub>. luk<sub>6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>3</sub> deng<sup>-2</sup> mou<sup>-2</sup> tung<sub>4</sub> wong<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sub>3</sub>  
mat<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> leng<sub>3</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> hoi<sup>-1</sup> sam<sup>-1</sup>.

***She will. The green hat and yellow socks are beautiful. She will be very happy.***

甲

好啊。

hou<sup>2</sup> aa-3.

**Nice.**



搵 唔 到 啲 地 牢  
wan<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> dei<sub>-6</sub> lou<sub>~4</sub>

***The Lost Dungeons***

Weshly 嘅古仔

Weshly ge-3 gu-2 zai-2

**Weshly's Story**

第一任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

**Quest 1**

醒

seng<sup>-2</sup>

**Awakening**

Weshly

---

你好。我叫 Weshly。我係  
一隻龍貓。今年我八歲。  
我有兄弟姊妹，但係我  
有一個好愛我爸爸媽  
媽。

Weshly

---

我都好愛佢咗. 我希望  
你會鍾意跟我嘅古仔.

下次見!

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

## Weshly

你好。我叫 Weshly。我係  
一隻龍貓。今年我八歲。  
我冇兄弟姊妹，但係我  
有一個好愛我爸爸媽  
媽。

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> giu<sub>-3</sub> Weshly. ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> zek<sub>-3</sub>  
lung<sub>-4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>. gam<sup>-1</sup> nin<sub>-4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> baat<sub>-3</sub> seoi<sub>-3</sub>. ngo<sub>5</sub> mou<sub>5</sub>  
hing<sup>-1</sup> dai<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> mui<sub>-6</sub>, daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> jau<sub>5</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub>  
hou<sup>-2</sup> oi<sub>-3</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sup>-1</sup>.

***Hello. My name is Weshly. I am a Chinchilla. This year I am 8 years old. I don't have any brothers and sisters, but I have parents who love me.***

## Weshly

我都好愛佢哋。我希望  
你會鍾意跟我嘅古仔。  
下次見！

ngo<sub>5</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> oi<sub>-3</sub> keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> hei<sup>-1</sup> mong<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>  
wui<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sub>-3</sub> gan<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> ge<sub>-3</sub> gu<sup>-2</sup> zai<sup>-2</sup>. haa<sub>-6</sub> ci<sub>-3</sub> gin<sub>-3</sub>!

***I also love them. I hope that you like following my story. See  
you next time!***



第 二 任 務

dai<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

**Quest 2**

深 淵

sam<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-1</sup>

**Abyss**

Weshly

---

我 喺 邊 度？ 呢 度 喺 邊 度？

個 度 喺 邊 度？ 呢 個 係 乜

嘢？ 個 個 係 乜 嘢？ 呢 啲 係

乜 嘢？

Weshly

---

嗰啲係乜嘢？我開啲眼  
嗰陣會見到乜嘢？或者  
芒果？或者香蕉？我唔  
知。

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

## Weshly

我 係 邊 度? 呢 度 係 邊 度?  
個 度 係 邊 度? 呢 個 係 乜  
嘢? 個 個 係 乜 嘢? 呢 啲 係  
乜 嘢?

ngo<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>? ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>? go<sup>-2</sup>  
dou<sub>6</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>? ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub>? go<sup>-2</sup>  
go<sub>-3</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub>? ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub>?

***Where am I? Where is here? Where is there? What is this?  
What is that? What are these?***

## Weshly

嗰啲係乜嘢？我開啲眼  
嗰陣會見到乜嘢？或者  
芒果？或者香蕉？我唔  
知。

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>,5</sub>? ngo<sub>,5</sub> hoi<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> ngaan<sub>,5</sub> go<sup>-2</sup>  
zan<sub>-6</sub> wui<sub>,5</sub> gin<sup>-3</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>,5</sub>? waak<sub>-6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>?  
waak<sub>-6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>? ngo<sub>,5</sub> m<sub>-4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>.

***What are those? What will I see when I open my eyes? Maybe  
a Mango? Maybe a Banana? I don't know.***



# 第三任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 3**

# 生果

saang<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

## **Fruits**

Weshly

---

唔該，我想買啲芒果同  
埋香蕉。知唔知喺邊度  
可以買呀？

Person

---

知。你可以喺三十五街  
嘅舖頭買。

Weshly

---

佢咁啲生果好唔好食？

Person

---

好食。好新鮮喎。

Weshly

---

唔該晒。而家會去嗰度

買啲生果。拜拜！

Person

---

唔使唔該. 拜拜!

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

## Weshly

唔該，我想買啲芒果同  
埋香蕉。知唔知喺邊度  
可以買呀？

m<sub>~4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>, ngo<sub>5</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>5</sub> di<sup>-1</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> tung<sub>~4</sub>  
maai<sub>~4</sub> hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>. zi<sup>-1</sup> m<sub>~4</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup> hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>~6</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup>  
ji<sub>5</sub> maai<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>~4</sub>?

***Excuse me, I want to buy some Mangos and Bananas. Do you  
know where I can buy them?***

## Person

---

知. 你 可 以 喺 三 十 五 街  
嘅 舖 頭 買 .

zi<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> hai<sup>-2</sup> saam<sup>-1</sup> sap<sub>-6</sub> ng<sub>5</sub> gaai<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>  
pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup> maai<sub>5</sub>.

***Yes I know. You can buy them at the 35th st store.***

## Weshly

---

佢 哋 啲 生 果 好 唔 好 食 ?

keoi<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>-6</sub>?

***Are their fruits delicious?***

## Person

---

好食·好新鮮啲。

hou<sup>-2</sup> sik<sub>-6</sub>. hou<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup> sin<sup>-1</sup> wo<sup>-3</sup>.

***Very delicious. Very fresh.***

## Weshly

---

唔該晒·而家會去嗰度  
買啲生果·拜拜!

m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup> saai<sup>-3</sup>. ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wui<sub>-5</sub> heoi<sup>-3</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub> maai<sub>-5</sub>  
di<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>. baai<sup>-1</sup> baai<sup>-3</sup>!

***Thank you very much. I'm going to go there now to buy the  
fruits. Bye bye!***

## Person

唔使唔該。拜拜！

m<sub>4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>. baai<sup>-1</sup> baai<sup>-3</sup>!

***You're welcome. Bye bye!***



# 第四任務

dai<sub>-6</sub> sei<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-6</sub>

## **Quest 4**

# 超級市場

ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sub>5</sub> coeng<sub>-4</sub>

## **Supermarket**

Weshly

---

早晨. 我而家搵緊啲嘢.

可唔可以幫我手呀?

Staff

---

梗係啦! 你搵緊乜嘢呀?

Weshly

---

我搵緊兩條魚, 三條龍,

四隻雞, 同十粒提子.

Staff

---

哈哈. 我哋一定冇龍. 你  
好笑. 但係我哋有魚, 雞,  
同提子. 你鍾意綠色嘅  
提子定係紅色嘅?

Weshly

---

兩個都鍾意食. 喺邊度  
可以搵到啲嘢?

Staff

---

喺呢度會搵到雞，喺個  
度會搵到魚同提子。

Weshly

---

好吖。唔該晒。

Staff

---

唔使唔該。你走之前想  
俾芒果盒你。唔使俾錢。

Weshly

---

哦！多謝！

Staff

---

唔使。喺盒度可以放到  
好多芒果。六個，七個，或  
者九個都 OK!

Weshly

---

好吖。好吖。拜拜！

地圖掛

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub> gwaa<sub>-3</sub>

***Maphack***

## Weshly

---

早晨·我而家搵緊啲嘢。  
可唔可以幫我手呀？

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>-4</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup> wan<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub>  
ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>5</sub> bong<sup>-1</sup> ngo<sub>5</sub> sau<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***Good morning. I'm looking for some stuff. Would you be able to help me?***

## Staff

---

梗係啦！你搵緊乜嘢呀？

gang<sup>-2</sup> hai<sub>-6</sub> laa<sup>-1</sup>! nei<sub>5</sub> wan<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

***Of course! What stuff are you looking for?***

## Weshly

---

我搵緊兩條魚，三條龍，  
四隻雞，同十粒提子。

ngo<sub>5</sub> wan<sup>-2</sup> gan<sup>-2</sup> loeng<sub>5</sub> tiu<sub>4</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub>, saam<sup>-1</sup> tiu<sub>4</sub> lung<sub>4</sub>,  
sei<sub>3</sub> zek<sub>3</sub> gai<sup>-1</sup>, tung<sub>4</sub> sap<sub>6</sub> nap<sup>-1</sup> tai<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup>.

***I'm looking for two fish, three dragons, four chickens, and  
ten grapes.***

## Staff

哈哈．我哋一定冇龍．你  
好笑．但係我哋有魚，雞，  
同提子．你鍾意綠色嘅  
提子定係紅色嘅？

haa<sup>-1</sup> haa<sup>-1</sup>. ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jat<sup>-1</sup> ding<sub>6</sub> mou<sub>5</sub> lung<sub>4</sub>. nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>  
siu<sup>-3</sup>. daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub> ngo<sub>5</sub> dei<sup>-2</sup> jau<sub>5</sub> jyu<sub>4</sub>, gai<sup>-1</sup>, tung<sub>4</sub> tai<sub>4</sub>  
zi<sup>-2</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> luk<sub>6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup> tai<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> ding<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>  
hung<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup> ge<sup>-3</sup>?

***Haha. We definitely don't have Dragons. You are funny. But we have Fish, Chicken, and Grapes. Do you like green Grapes or Red ones?***

## Weshly

兩個都鍾意食。喺邊度  
可以搵到啲嘢？

loeng<sub>5</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> dou<sup>-1</sup> zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup> sik<sub>6</sub>. hai<sup>-2</sup> bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup>  
ji<sub>5</sub> wan<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup> je<sub>5</sub>?

***I like eating both of them. Where can I find those things?***

## Staff

喺呢度會搵到雞，喺個  
度會搵到魚同提子。

hai<sup>-2</sup> ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>6</sub> wui<sub>5</sub> wan<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> gai<sup>-1</sup>, hai<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>6</sub>  
wui<sub>5</sub> wan<sup>-2</sup> dou<sup>-2</sup> jyu<sub>4</sub> tung<sub>4</sub> tai<sub>4</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup>.

***Here you can find the Chickens, over there you can find the  
Fish and Grapes.***

## Weshly

---

好吖. 唔該晒.

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-1</sup>. m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup> saai<sup>-3</sup>.

***Sounds good. Thank you so much.***

## Staff

---

唔使唔該. 你走之前想  
俾芒果盒你. 唔使俾錢.

m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>. nei<sub>5</sub> zau<sup>-2</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub> soeng<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup>  
mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup> hap<sub>-6</sub> nei<sub>5</sub>. m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> bei<sup>-2</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>.

***You're welcome. Before you leave I would like to give you this  
Mango box. No need to pay money.***

Weshly

哦！多謝！

o<sub>-4</sub>! do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub>!

**Oh! Thank you!**

Staff

唔使。喺盒度可以放到  
好多芒果。六個，七個，或  
者九個都 OK!

m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>. hai<sup>-2</sup> hap<sub>-6</sub> dou<sub>-6</sub> ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>-5</sub> fong<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup> hou<sup>-2</sup>  
do<sup>-1</sup> mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>. luk<sub>-6</sub> go<sub>-3</sub>, cat<sup>-1</sup> go<sub>-3</sub>, waak<sub>-6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup> gau<sup>-2</sup>  
go<sub>-3</sub> dou<sup>-1</sup> OK!

***You're welcome. You can put a lot of Mangos inside the box.  
6, 7, or even 9 are all OK!***

## Weshly

好吖. 好吖. 拜拜!

hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-1</sup>. hou<sup>-2</sup> aa<sup>-1</sup>. baai<sup>-1</sup> baai<sup>-3</sup>!

***Sounds good, sounds good. Bye bye!***



# 粵語索引

jyut<sub>6</sub> jyu<sub>5</sub> sok<sub>3</sub> jan<sub>5</sub>

***Cantodex***

## Cantodex

---

This is a database containing basic information for all of the monsters you will encounter in the game. They will continue to be useful to you throughout your Cantonese journey.

*This list is constantly being refined.*

### Pronouns

我	I
ngo <sub>5</sub>	
你	You
nei <sub>5</sub>	
佢	He / She / It / They (Singular)
keoi <sub>5</sub>	

## Plurality

哋

dei<sup>-2</sup>

Used to turn pronouns into their plural form.

## Negation

唔

m<sub>-4</sub>

Used for negation.

## Ownership

嘅

ge<sup>-3</sup>

Used to indicate ownership.

## Classifiers

個

go<sup>-3</sup>

The general classifier.

本

bun<sup>-2</sup>

Used for books.

條

tiu<sub>-4</sub>

For long objects or strips.

架

gaa<sup>-3</sup>

For machines or electronic devices.

隻

zek<sup>-3</sup>

For animals.

間

gaan<sup>-1</sup>

For buildings.

枝

zi<sup>-1</sup>

For pens, pencils, etc

封

fung<sup>-1</sup>

For letters (Document)

### Ending Particles

呀

aa<sub>4</sub>

Can be used for questions or statements in a generic way.

咩

me<sup>-1</sup>

Shows being surprised or sarcasm.

啦

laa<sup>-1</sup>

Used for statements.

啊

aa-3

Used to show agreement.

喎

wo-3

Indicates some sort of realization or to indicate something is important.

### Tenses / Action State

過

gwo-3

Action was previously experienced (Past).

咗

zo-2

Action has been completed (Past).

緊

gan-2

Action is currently in progress (Present).

會

wui<sub>5</sub>

Action is going to happen (Future).

到

dou<sup>-2</sup>

Action was able to be completed successfully.

唔到

m<sub>4</sub> dou<sup>-2</sup>

Action was not able to be completed successfully.

未

mei<sub>6</sub>

Action has not yet happened.

晒

saai<sub>3</sub>

Action is done but some other related action may still happen.

完

jyun<sub>4</sub>

Action is completely finished.

## Nouns

嘢

je<sub>5</sub>

A thing (General)

書

syu<sup>-1</sup>

Book

魚

jyu<sub>4</sub>

Fish

馬

maa<sub>5</sub>

Horse

龍

lung<sub>4</sub>

Dragon

貓

maau<sup>-1</sup>

Cat

龍 貓

lung<sub>4</sub> maau<sup>-1</sup>

Chinchilla

狗

gau<sup>-2</sup>

Dog

菜

coi<sub>3</sub>

Vegetable

生果

saang<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

Fruit

老鼠

lou<sub>5</sub> syu<sup>-2</sup>

Rat / Mouse

蘋果

ping<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

Apple

火

fo<sup>-2</sup>

Fire

草

cou<sup>-2</sup>

Grass

電

din<sub>-6</sub>

Electricity

水

seoi<sup>2</sup>

Water

雨

jyu<sub>-5</sub>

Rain

雪

syut<sub>-3</sub>

Snow

茶

caa<sub>-4</sub>

Tea

杯

bui<sup>-1</sup>

Cup

樽

zeon<sup>-1</sup>

Bottle

果汁

gwo<sup>-2</sup> zap<sup>-1</sup>

Juice

橙

caang<sup>-2</sup>

Orange

芒果

mong<sup>-1</sup> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

Mango

香蕉

hoeng<sup>-1</sup> ziu<sup>-1</sup>

**Banana**

錢

cin<sub>-4</sub>

**Money**

蚊

man<sup>-1</sup>

**General unit for currency (Dollar, Peso, Euro, Yen, Etc)**

問題

man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>

**Question / Problem**

事

si<sub>-6</sub>

**Problem / Issue**

機

gei<sup>-1</sup>

Machine

車

ce<sup>-1</sup>

Car / Vehicle

巴士

baa<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

Bus

的士

dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

Taxi

地鐵

dei<sub>-6</sub> tit<sub>-3</sub>

Train (Underground)

的士

dik<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

Taxi

飛機

fei<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

Airplane (lit. Flying Machine)

站

zaam<sub>-6</sub>

Station (Transportation)

公園

gung<sup>-1</sup> jyun<sup>-2</sup>

Park (Location)

地圖

dei<sub>-6</sub> tou<sub>-4</sub>

Map

博物館

bok-3 mat-6 gun-2

Museum

顏色

ngaan-4 sik-1

Color

三文治

saam-1 man-4 zi-6

Sandwich

功課

gung-1 fo-3

Homework

寫字樓

se-2 zi-6 lau-4

Office

老師

lou<sub>5</sub> si<sup>-1</sup>

Teacher

醫生

ji<sup>-1</sup> saang<sup>-1</sup>

Doctor (Medical)

律師

leot<sub>6</sub> si<sup>-1</sup>

Lawyer

工程師

gung<sup>-1</sup> cing<sub>4</sub> si<sup>-1</sup>

Engineer

工人

gung<sup>-1</sup> jan<sub>4</sub>

Maid

電腦

din<sub>-6</sub> nou<sub>-5</sub>

Computer

電視

din<sub>-6</sub> si<sub>-6</sub>

Television

電話

din<sub>-6</sub> waa<sup>-2</sup>

Telephone (Landline or Mobile)

手

sau<sup>-2</sup>

Hand (Body)

手機

sau<sup>-2</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

Cellphone

號碼

hou<sub>-6</sub> maa<sub>-5</sub>

Number

荔枝

lai<sub>-6</sub> zi<sup>-1</sup>

Lychee (Fruit)

士多啤梨

si<sup>-2</sup> do<sup>-1</sup> be<sup>-1</sup> lei<sup>-2</sup>

Strawberry

朱古力

zyu<sup>-1</sup> gu<sup>-1</sup> lik<sup>-1</sup>

Chocolate

雲呢拿

wan<sub>-4</sub> nei<sup>-1</sup> laa<sup>-2</sup>

Vanilla

多士

do<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup>

Toast (Food)

枱

toi<sub>-4</sub>

Table

馬路

maa<sub>-5</sub> lou<sub>-6</sub>

Road

司機

si<sup>-1</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

Driver

地方

dei<sub>-6</sub> fong<sup>-1</sup>

A place

鋪頭

pou<sup>-3</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

A store

超級市場

ciu<sup>-1</sup> kap<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>5</sup> coeng<sup>-4</sup>

Supermarket

單車

daan<sup>-1</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>

Bicycle

信

seon<sup>-3</sup>

Letter (Document)

火車

fo<sup>-2</sup> ce<sup>-1</sup>

Train (Above Ground)

## Family

屋企

uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup>

Home

人

jan<sub>-4</sub>

Person / People

屋企人

uk<sup>-1</sup> kei<sup>-2</sup> jan<sub>-4</sub>

Family

爸爸

baa<sub>-4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup>

Father

媽媽

maa<sub>-4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>

Mother

爸爸媽媽

baa<sub>-4</sub> baa<sup>-1</sup> maa<sub>-4</sub> maa<sup>-1</sup>

Parents

哥哥

go<sub>-4</sub> go<sup>-1</sup>

Older Brother

姐姐

ze<sub>-4</sub> ze<sup>-1</sup>

Older Sister

細佬

sai<sub>-3</sub> lou<sup>-2</sup>

Younger Brother

細妹

sai<sub>-3</sub> mui<sub>-6</sub>

Younger Sister

老公

lou<sub>5</sub> gung<sup>-1</sup>

Husband

老婆

lou<sub>5</sub> po<sub>4</sub>

Wife

仔

zai<sup>-2</sup>

Son

女

neoi<sub>5</sub>

Daughter. Girl. Female.

## Locations

香港

hoeng<sup>-1</sup> gong<sup>-2</sup>

Hong Kong

台灣

toi<sub>4</sub> waan<sup>-1</sup>

Taiwan

澳門

ou<sub>3</sub> mun<sub>4</sub>

Macau

美國

mei<sub>5</sub> gwok<sub>3</sub>

United States of America

中國

zung<sup>-1</sup> gwok<sub>3</sub>

China

英國

jing<sup>-1</sup> gwok<sub>3</sub>

United Kingdom

法國

faat-3 gwok-3

France

意大利

ji-3 daai-6 lei-6

Italy

西班牙

sai-1 baan-1 ngaa-4

Spain

日本

jat-6 bun-2

Japan

韓國

hon-4 gwok-3

Korea

越南

jyut<sub>-6</sub> naam<sub>-4</sub>

**Vietnam**

墨西哥

mak<sub>-6</sub> sai<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-1</sup>

**Mexico**

加拿大

gaa<sup>-1</sup> naa<sub>-4</sub> daai<sub>-6</sub>

**Canada**

紐約

nau<sup>-2</sup> joek<sub>-3</sub>

**New York**

加州

gaa<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup>

**California**

波士頓

bo<sup>-1</sup> si<sup>-2</sup> deon<sup>-2</sup>

**Boston**

澳洲

ou<sup>-3</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup>

**Australia**

歐洲

au<sup>-1</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup>

**Europe**

亞洲

aa<sup>-3</sup> zau<sup>-1</sup>

**Asia**

## Colors

紅色

hung<sup>-4</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

**Red**

白色

baak<sub>-6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

White

黑色

hak<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Black

黃色

wong<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Yellow

藍色

laam<sub>-4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Blue

綠色

luk<sub>-6</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Green

橙色

caang<sup>2</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Orange

金色

gam<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Gold

銀色

ngan<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Silver

紫色

zi<sup>-2</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Purple

粉紅色

fan<sup>-2</sup> hung<sub>4</sub> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Pink

啡色

fe<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Brown

灰色

fui<sup>-1</sup> sik<sup>-1</sup>

Gray

### Verbs

係

hai<sub>-6</sub>

To be

有

jau<sub>-5</sub>

To have

冇

mou<sub>-5</sub>

To not have

做

zou<sub>-6</sub>

To do

可以

ho<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>-5</sub>

To be able to

食

sik<sub>-6</sub>

To eat

飲

jam<sup>-2</sup>

To drink

要

jiu<sub>-3</sub>

To need

鍾意

zung<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup>

To like

想

soeng<sup>-2</sup>

To want

問

man<sub>-6</sub>

To ask

學

hok<sub>-6</sub>

To learn

教

gaau<sup>-3</sup>

To teach

走

zau<sup>-2</sup>

To leave

叫

giu<sup>-3</sup>

To call

買

maai<sub>5</sub>

To buy

賣

maai<sub>6</sub>

To sell

喺

hai<sup>-2</sup>

To be located at

睇

tai<sup>-2</sup>

To see, read, look, watch

去

heoi<sup>-3</sup>

To go

同意

tung<sup>-4</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup>

To agree

知

zi<sup>-1</sup>

To know (A piece of information)

識

sik<sup>-1</sup>

To know (A person or a skill)

煮

zyu<sup>-2</sup>

To cook

整

zing<sup>-2</sup>

To make (like making a sandwich)

煲

bou<sup>-1</sup>

To boil

搭

daap<sup>-3</sup>

To ride (Transportation)

飛

fei<sup>-1</sup>

To fly

講

gong<sup>-2</sup>

To speak

話

waa<sup>-2</sup>

To say. Speech.

等

dang<sup>-2</sup>

To wait

覺得

gok<sup>-3</sup> dak<sup>-1</sup>

To think. To feel.

打

daa<sup>-2</sup>

To hit

玩

waan<sup>-2</sup>

To play

揸

zaa<sup>-1</sup>

To drive

起身

hei<sup>-2</sup> san<sup>-1</sup>

To get up

瞓覺

fan<sup>-3</sup> gaau<sup>-3</sup>

To sleep

醒

seng<sup>-2</sup>

To wake up

信

seon<sup>-3</sup>

To trust

## Adjectives

好

hou<sup>-2</sup>

Good. Very

真

zan<sup>-1</sup>

Real. Really

𢵄

gui<sup>-6</sup>

Tired (Physical)

大

daai<sup>-6</sup>

Big

細

sai<sup>-3</sup>

Small

長

coeng<sup>-4</sup>

Long

短

dyun<sup>-2</sup>

Short

高

gou<sup>-1</sup>

Tall

矮

ai<sup>-2</sup>

Short

靚

leng<sup>-3</sup>

Beautiful. Pretty.

得意

dak<sup>-1</sup> ji<sup>-3</sup>

Cute

核突

wat<sup>-6</sup> dat<sup>-6</sup>

Ugly

飽

baau<sup>-2</sup>

To be full (from food)

餓

ngo<sup>-6</sup>

Hungry

簡單

gaan<sup>-2</sup> daan<sup>-1</sup>

Simple

## Numbers

零

ling<sub>-4</sub>

Zero (0)

一

jat<sup>-1</sup>

One (1)

二

ji<sub>-6</sub>

Two (2). Used in counting.

兩

loeng<sub>-5</sub>

Two (2). Used in quantities.

三

saam<sup>-1</sup>

**Three (3)**

四

sei<sup>-3</sup>

**Four (4)**

五

ng<sub>5</sub>

**Five (5)**

六

luk<sub>6</sub>

**Six (6)**

七

cat<sup>-1</sup>

**Seven (7)**

八

baat<sub>-3</sub>

**Eight (8)**

九

gau<sup>-2</sup>

**Nine (9)**

十

sap<sub>-6</sub>

**Ten (10)**

廿

jaa<sub>-6</sub> aa<sup>-1</sup>

**Alternate Writing For Twenty (20, 二十)**

卅

saa<sup>-1</sup> aa<sup>-1</sup>

**Alternate Writing For Thirty (30, 三十)**

百

baak<sub>-3</sub>

Hundred (100)

千

cin<sup>-1</sup>

Thousand (1,000)

萬

maan<sub>-6</sub>

Ten Thousand (10,000)

億

jik<sup>-1</sup>

Hundred Million (100,000,000)

**Time**

時間

si<sub>-4</sub> gaan<sup>-1</sup>

Time

點鐘

$\text{dim}^{-2} \text{zung}^{-1}$

O'Clock

鐘頭

$\text{zung}^{-1} \text{tau}^{-2}$

Hour

分

$\text{fan}^{-1}$

Minute

秒

$\text{miu}_{-5}$

Second

年

$\text{nin}_{-4}$

Year

月

jyut<sub>-6</sub>

Month

日

jat<sub>-6</sub>

Day

鐘

zung<sup>-1</sup>

O'Clock

禮拜

lai<sub>,5</sub> baai<sub>-3</sub>

Week (Interchangeable with 星期)

星期

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub>

Week (Interchangeable with 禮拜)

今日

gam<sup>-1</sup> jat<sub>-6</sub>

Today

尋日

cam<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

Yesterday

聽日

ting<sub>-3</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

Tomorrow

前日

cin<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

The day before yesterday.

後日

hau<sub>-6</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

The day after tomorrow.

今年

gam<sup>-1</sup> nin<sub>-4</sub>

This year

舊年

gau<sub>-6</sub> nin<sub>-4</sub>

Last year

出年

ceot<sup>-1</sup> nin<sub>-4</sub>

Next year

今個月

gam<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

This month

下個月

haa<sub>-6</sub> go<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

Next month

上個月

soeng<sub>-6</sub> go<sub>-3</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

Last month

歲

seoi<sub>-3</sub>

Age

而家

ji<sub>-4</sub> gaa<sup>-1</sup>

Now

星期一

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup>

Monday

星期二

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub>

Tuesday

星期三

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> saam<sup>-1</sup>

Wednesday

星期四

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> sei<sup>-3</sup>

Thursday

星期五

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> ng<sub>-5</sub>

Friday

星期六

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> luk<sub>-6</sub>

Saturday

星期日

sing<sup>-1</sup> kei<sub>-4</sub> jat<sub>-6</sub>

Sunday

一月

jat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

January

二月

ji<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

February

三月

saam<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

March

四月

sei<sub>-3</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

April

五月

ng<sub>-5</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

May

六月

luk<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

June

七月

cat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

July

八月

baat<sup>-3</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

August

九月

gau<sup>-2</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

September

十月

sap<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

October

十一月

sap<sub>-6</sub> jat<sup>-1</sup> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

November

十二月

sap<sub>-6</sub> ji<sub>-6</sub> jyut<sub>-6</sub>

December

### Position

上

soeng<sub>-6</sub>

Top / Above

下

haa<sub>-6</sub>

Bottom / Below

左

zo<sup>-2</sup>

Left

右

jau<sup>-2</sup>

Right

前

cin<sub>-4</sub>

In Front

後

hau<sub>-6</sub>

Behind

之前

zi<sup>-1</sup> cin<sub>-4</sub>

Before

之後

zi<sup>-1</sup> hau<sub>-6</sub>

After

一直

jat<sup>-1</sup> zik<sub>-6</sub>

**Straight**

到

dou<sup>-2</sup>

**To / Towards**

北

bak<sup>-1</sup>

**North**

南

naam<sub>-4</sub>

**South**

東

dung<sup>-1</sup>

**East**

西

sai<sup>-1</sup>

West

外

ngoi<sub>-6</sub>

Outer / Outside

內

noi<sub>-6</sub>

Inner / Inside

度

dou<sub>-6</sub>

At. Usually used with 喺.

呢 個

ni<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

This

嗰 個

go<sup>-2</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

That

呢 度

ni<sup>-1</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>

Here

嗰 度

go<sup>-2</sup> dou<sub>-6</sub>

There

呢 啲

ni<sup>-1</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

These

嗰 啲

go<sup>-2</sup> di<sup>-1</sup>

Those

## Question Words

邊個

bin<sup>-1</sup> go<sup>-3</sup>

Who / Which

乜嘢

mat<sup>-1</sup> je<sup>5</sup>

What

幾時

gei<sup>-2</sup> si<sup>-4</sup>

When

邊度

bin<sup>-1</sup> dou<sup>-6</sup>

Where

點解

dim<sup>-2</sup> gai<sup>-2</sup>

Why

點

dim<sup>-2</sup>

How

因為

jan<sup>-1</sup> wai<sub>-6</sub>

Because

### Grammar

同理

tung<sub>-4</sub> maai<sub>-4</sub>

And

定係

ding<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub>

Or (Question)

或者

waak<sub>-6</sub> ze<sup>-2</sup>

Or (Statement)

如果

jyu<sub>4</sub> gwo<sup>-2</sup>

If

但係

daan<sub>6</sub> hai<sub>6</sub>

But

嗰陣時

go<sup>-2</sup> zan<sub>6</sub> si<sub>4</sub>

When. At that time.

嘅時候

ge<sup>-3</sup> si<sub>4</sub> hau<sub>6</sub>

When. At that time.

除咗 X 之外 Y

ceoi<sub>4</sub> zo<sup>-2</sup> X zi<sup>-1</sup> ngoi<sub>6</sub> Y

Besides X, There is Y.

而且

ji<sub>4</sub> ce<sup>-2</sup>

**Additionally. And Also.**

另外

ling<sub>6</sub> ngoi<sub>6</sub>

**Additionally. And Also.**

就

zau<sub>6</sub>

**Then. As soon as.**

一齊

jat<sup>-1</sup> cai<sub>4</sub>

**Together**

最

zeoi<sub>3</sub>

**The most**

雖然

seoi<sup>-1</sup> jin<sub>-4</sub>

Although

唔止 X, 但係 Y

m<sub>-4</sub> zi<sup>-2</sup> X, daan<sub>-6</sub> hai<sub>-6</sub> Y

Not only X, but Y

所以

so<sup>-2</sup> ji<sub>-5</sub>

Therefore. So.

仲

zung<sub>-6</sub>

Still (Continue to)

先

sin<sup>-1</sup>

To do something first

吓

haa<sup>-2</sup>

To do an action a bit.

## Phrases

多謝

do<sup>-1</sup> ze<sub>-6</sub>

Thank you (Gifts, Compliments)

唔該

m<sub>-4</sub> goi<sup>-1</sup>

Thank you (Service, Assistance). Excuse Me.

唔使

m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup>

You are welcome (lit. No need)

你好

nei<sub>5</sub> hou<sup>-2</sup>

Hello

點呀？

dim<sup>-2</sup> aa<sub>-4</sub>?

What's up? How are you doing?

好耐冇見

hou<sup>-2</sup> noi<sub>-6</sub> mou<sub>-5</sub> gin<sub>-3</sub>

Long time no see.

唔使客氣

m<sub>-4</sub> sai<sup>-2</sup> haak<sub>-3</sub> hei<sub>-3</sub>

You are welcome (lit. No need to be so polite).

冇問題

mou<sub>-5</sub> man<sub>-6</sub> tai<sub>-4</sub>

No problem

早晨

zou<sup>-2</sup> san<sub>-4</sub>

Good Morning

再見

zoi-3 gin-3

Goodbye (lit. Again see)

拜拜

baai-3 baai-3

Bye Bye

早啱

zou<sup>-2</sup> tau<sup>-2</sup>

Good Night (but said to someone you are close to)

打機

daa<sup>-2</sup> gei<sup>-1</sup>

To play video games.

玩遊戲

waan<sup>-2</sup> jau<sub>4</sub> hei-3

To play games (not electronic games).



更加資料

gang<sup>-3</sup> gaa<sup>-1</sup> zi<sup>-1</sup> liu<sup>-2</sup>

***Additional Information***

## ***Additional Information***

The following is my recommended list of Cantonese tools and resources. I'm not sponsored by any of these organizations, and have spent my own money for all of my material. If I ever do become sponsored in any way, I'll mention it.

### ***Cantonese Books***

My Cantonese book collection consists mostly of books purchased at the [Greenwood Press](#). They have an Amazing, High Quality Cantonese book collection, and they definitely deserve support. I've also purchased a few books from Amazon that weren't available at the Greenwood Press. Below you can find my list of recommended Cantonese books at different levels of competency. I would recommend getting them from top to bottom, however, if there is a certain book that excites you, then get it! All of the below books are fun and enjoyable in their own unique way. I thank all the Authors and Publishers for making these books a reality.

**Note:** As of the time of this writing (**2026-03-06-2100 ET**), the Greenwood Press website is down and only displays a white page upon loading. The website has been down for a while and I'm not sure when or if the website will come back up. I'm not sure if they went out of business or if they were shut down. I'll be monitoring their site and will update this in the future. I sent them an email but I still haven't heard anything back from them.

### ***Beginner Level***

- [Cantonese Chinese Characters, Level 1 Basic 250: In Truly Traditional Script](#)
  - Tao Yung (ISBN: 979-8328120524)
- [Cantonese for English Speakers Book 1-2](#)
  - Dr. Esther Yuk Wah Lai (ISBN: 978-962-279-256-2)
- [A Cantonese Book \(3rd Edition\)](#)
  - Chan Kwok Kin, Betty Hung (ISBN: 978-962-279-266-1)
- [Cantonese in Hong Kong](#)
  - Kwok-kin Chan, Chung-mou Si (ISBN: 978-962-279-247-0)
- [Discover with Jade: Gung Gung's Garden \(Cantonese\)](#)
  - Sheun Lee, Tammy Do (ISBN: 1998215024 / 978-1998215027)
  - This is a children's book but may be a good addition to your collection.

### ***Intermediate Level***

- [About Hong Kong - For Intermediate Cantonese Learners](#)

- Betty Hung, C. M. Si (ISBN: 962-279-225-1)
- [\*\*Talk to Me in Cantonese\*\*](#)
  - Betty Hung (ISBN: 9888455869 / 978-9888455867)
  - This is the sequel to A Cantonese Book (3rd Edition).
- [\*\*A Feng Shui Master - Learning Cantonese through Stories\*\*](#)
  - Lee Siu Lun (ISBN: 962-279-244-8)
- [\*\*Fun With Cantonese - Nouns\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-259-3)
- [\*\*Fun with Cantonese - Verb\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 962-279-223-5)
- [\*\*Fun with Cantonese - Adjectives\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-306-4)
- [\*\*Fun With Cantonese - Basic Patterns\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-260-9)
- [\*\*Fun with Cantonese - Idioms and Common Sayings\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-334-7)
- [\*\*Fun with Cantonese - Colloquial Expressions\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-316-3)
- [\*\*Fun with Cantonese - Sounds and Tones\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 962-279-222-7)
- [\*\*Fun with Cantonese - Numerals\*\*](#)
  - Yin-ping Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 978-962-279-332-3)

### ***Advanced Level***

- [\*\*Wedding Bells: Cantonese Reading Material for Intermediate and Advanced Learners\*\*](#)
  - Cream Lee & Shin Kataoka (ISBN: 9622792030)
- [\*\*Advanced Level Current Cantonese Colloquialisms\*\*](#)
  - Yin-Ping Cream Lee (ISBN: 9622791883)

## ***Cantonese Dictionaries***

I normally use a combination of [Pleco](#) w/ their paid Cantonese Dictionaries & Extensions, and [Cantodict](#).

### ***Cantonese Keyboards (iOS, Android, Web)***

You can type Cantonese using **Jyutping** on iOS, Android, Windows, or Web by using [TypeDuck](#). If for whatever reason you can't install TypeDuck, there are a few other ways you can type Cantonese as well.

#### ***iOS***

- Go to **Settings -> General -> Keyboard -> Keyboards**.
- Select **Add New Keyboard**.
- Search for **Cantonese, Traditional**
- Select **Phonetic**
- Click **Done**.

**Note:** The **iOS Cantonese Phonetic Keyboard** is not **Jyutping**, but a close variation. Hopefully one day Apple will support the native **Jyutping** keyboard directly.

#### ***Android***

- Download **Gboard**.
- Search for **Cantonese** in the **Languages** section and select 粵語 (jyut<sub>-6</sub> jyu<sub>5</sub>).
- Then select 粵語拼音 (jyut<sub>-6</sub> jyu<sub>5</sub> ping<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-1</sub>), and unselect any other options (feel free to select what you do want though).
- Make sure that for the 粵語拼音 (jyut<sub>-6</sub> jyu<sub>5</sub> ping<sub>-3</sub> jam<sub>-1</sub>), that **Jyutping** is the chosen format under the **Romanization scheme** category.

#### ***Web***

If you have an internet connection, you can use the [TypeDuck Web UI](#) to type Jyutping.

